

A SHORT

LATIN GRAMMAR

ON THE SYSTEM OF

CRUDE FORMS.

BY

T. HEWITT KEY, M.A., F.C.P.S.

LATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN, NOW OF COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR,
IN UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON ;
HEAD-MASTER OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE SCHOOL.



LONDON:
GEORGE BELL, 186 FLEET STREET.

1852.

305. 4. 7.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY ROBSON, LEVEY, AND FRANKLYN,
Great New Street, Fetter Lane.

PREFACE.



THE advantages of the Crude-form system in the study of the Latin language are stated in the Preface to the work of which this is an abridgment, and at a greater length in *The English Journal of Education* (Bell), New Series, Nos. 48 and 49 (Dec. 1850 and Jan. 1851).

In adapting the larger Grammar to the wants of beginners, a few slight changes have been introduced. To the crude forms a hyphen has been affixed, so as to imply that an addition to the word must be made before it is entitled to take a place in a Latin sentence. The section marked 451* has been added. Those who start from *dīc-* 'say,' *dūc-* 'draw,' *fīd-* 'trust,' will find no stumbling-block in the forms *malidīcus*, *fatidīcus*; *dux*, *dūcis*; *redux*, *redūcis*; *fīdes*, *perfidus*. On the other hand, the process by which from these short bases we are conducted to the imperfect tenses, *dīcere*, *dūcere*, *fīdere*, &c., has its precise parallel in the formation of the Greek λειπειν, φευγειν, from the crude forms λιπ- (ελιπον), φυγ- (εφυγον). In the tables of the principal parts, § 533, &c. a somewhat different arrangement has been thought desirable. Lastly, an addition has been made to the number of substantives and adjectives which are declined at length.

The numbers attached to the paragraphs agree with those of the larger Grammar; so that a pupil desirous of further

information on any point may pass at once from this book to the other. This advantage seems fully to compensate for any offence which the eye may take at a series of numbers not consecutive.



ABBREVIATIONS.

ab.	ablative.	masc. m.	masculine.
ac.	accusative.	neut. n.	neuter.
adj.	adjective.	nom. n.	nominative.
adv.	adverb.	part.	participle.
c.f.	crude form.	perf.	perfect.
comp.	comparative.	plur. pl. p.	plural.
dat. d.	dative.	pos.	positive.
fem. f.	feminine.	pres.	present.
fut.	future.	(r.)	reflective verb.
gen. g.	genitive.	sing. s.	singular.
imperat.	imperative.	subj.	subjunctive.
imperf.	imperfect.	subst.	substantive.
ind.	indicative.	superl. sup.	superlative.
infin.	infinitive.	voc. v.	vocative.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

- THE Latin language was spoken in Rome and Latium. 1
- The Alphabet consisted of twenty-one letters : *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i* or *j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u* or *v, x* (without any *w, y, z*). 2
- The Vowels are *i, e, a, o, u*. 3
- The Liquid Consonants are *r, l, n, m*. 4
- X is a Double Consonant, the same as *ks*. 5
- K is used only before *a*, Q only before *u*. 6
- The true Pronunciation of the Latin language is no longer 7 known. The Vowels were probably pronounced as they now are in Italian.
- In England the words are pronounced nearly as they would be 8 in English.
- The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are generally pronounced as *e*. 12
- A short syllable is pronounced rapidly, and is sometimes marked 13 by a crescent (˘) : as the *i* in *domīno-*, *master*.
- A syllable is said to be *long by nature*, when the voice dwells 14 upon the vowel : as, *vē-na-*, *vein*.
- A syllable is said to be *long by position*, when the vowel is fol- 15 lowed by two consonants which do not both belong to the next syllable : as, *māg-no-*, *great* ; *ēt mater*, *and the mother* ; *sūnt*, *they are*.
- A straight line (¯), placed over the vowel, is used to denote a 16 long syllable : as, *vēna-*, *vein*.
- A diphthong is long by nature : as, *aū-ro-*, *gold*. 17
- A vowel followed by a vowel in the next syllable is generally 18 short : as, *fi-li-o-*, *son*.
- A short vowel followed by a consonant should generally be pro- 19 nounced with the consonant : as, *pāt-er-*, *father*.
- A long vowel followed by a consonant should generally be pro- 20 nounced separately from the consonant : as, *mā-ter-*, *mother*.

- 21 If a short vowel be followed by two consonants which can be pronounced at the beginning of a syllable, as, *br, cr, gr, pr, tr,* and *pl*, there are often two ways of dividing the word. Thus *fūnebri-*, *mournful, connected with a funeral*, is pronounced in prose *fu-ně-bri-*; but in verse it may be pronounced *fu-něb-ri-*. A syllable, which is sometimes long and sometimes short, is said to be common, and is marked (~ or *), as *funē*bri-* or *funěbri-*.

- 27 *Enclitics* are little words pronounced and sometimes even written with the word preceding: as, *quě, and; matér-que, and the mother: vě, or; matér-ve, or the mother: ně, in asking questions; matér-ne abiit? is the mother gone away?*

- 29 *Elision*. When one word ends with a vowel or a vowel and an *m*, and the next begins with a vowel or an *h*, the final vowel and the *m* of the first word are not pronounced in poetry: thus,

Monstrum horrendum informe ingens cui lūmēn ādemptum
should be read:

Monstr', hórrend', ínform', ingéns cui lúmen adémptum.

- 30 The simplest words consist of one syllable: as, the verbs *āg-*, *drive or put in motion; frāg-, break;* or the substantives *pěd-, foot; sāl-, salt; sōl-, sun.*

These are called *roots*.

- 32 A *suffix* is a syllable which is added to the end of a word, and adds to or alters its meaning: as, *frāg-, break; frag-měn-, a piece broken off.*

- 33 A short vowel, generally *ɪ*, seems sometimes to be inserted before the suffix: as in *frāg-ɪ-li-, easily broken.*

- 34 Several suffixes may be added, one after another, to the same root: as, *fāc-, do; fāc-ɪ-li-, easily done; fācīlī-tāt-, the being easily done, facility; fācīlītāt-ɪs, of facility.*

Words formed by suffixes are said to be *derived*.

- 35 A *prefix* is a syllable which is placed before a root, and adds to or alters its meaning: as, *frāg-, break; per-fring-, break through: dūc-, lead; dē-dūc-, lead down.*

Words formed by prefixes are said to be *compounded*.

- 36 In the derivation and composition of words the letters are sometimes slightly altered: as, *frāg- or frang-, break; frac-to-, broken; perfring-, break through: ōpēs-, work; ōpěr-ɪs, of the work.* This last change of an *s* into *r* is very common.

NOUNS.

The Latin language has no article, so that a Latin substantive 37 may be translated in three ways: 1. without an article, as *müliër*, *woman*; 2. with the indefinite article, as *müliër*, *a woman*; 3. with the definite article, as *müliër*, *the woman*.

With Latin substantives there are three questions to be asked: 38 What is the gender? What is the case? What is the number?

The genders are two, *masculine* and *feminine*. If a noun be of 39 neither gender, it is called *neuter*.

Little suffixes, with the meaning of prepositions, are added to 40 nouns. Thus *Sulmōn-* was the name of a town in Italy. Add the suffix *em* to it, and *e-ō Sulmōn-em* means, *I am going to Sulmon*. Add the suffix *i*, and *Sulmōn-i hābītō* means, *I reside at Sulmon*.

A noun, before these suffixes are added, is said to be in the 41 *crude form*, for which the letters C.F. will be used; and the word itself will have a hyphen after it to show that it is a crude form: as, *dōmīno-*, *frāgīli-*.

The word made up of a noun and one of these suffixes is called 42 *a case*.

There are five suffixes, which being added to a crude form make 43 five cases: the nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and ablative. To these is commonly added the vocative.*

The *nominative* is commonly formed by the suffix *s*: as, *trāb-*, 44 *a beam*, nom. *trabs*.

The nominative marks the quarter *from* which an action proceeds. Thus, in the sentence, 'the master strikes the slave,' the blow comes *from* the master: this word *master* in Latin would be in the nominative case.

The nominative is called the *subject* in English grammar.

The *vocative* is used in addressing people. *44

The *accusative* is formed by the suffix *em*: as, *trāb-*, *a beam*, 45 acc. *trāb-em*.

The accusative marks the quarter *to* which an action is directed: 46 as, *eō Sulmōnem*, *I am going to Sulmon*. Or again in the sentence, 'the master strikes the slave,' the blow goes *to* the slave: this word *slave* in Latin would be in the accusative case.

* The case so called is in reality, so far as the Latin language is concerned, a nominative; except perhaps in the singular of the *o* declension.

The accusative is called the *object* in English grammar.*

- 47 The *genitive* is formed by the suffix *iūs* or *is* : as, quo- or cu-, *who*, gen. quō-iūs or cū-jūs; trāb-, gen. trāb-is.

The genitive signifies *from* : as, călor sōl-is, *the heat from the sun*. It is commonly translated by *of* : as, călor sōl-is, *the heat of the sun*; or by the English suffix *'s* : as, călor sōl-is, *the sun's heat*.†

- 48 The nominative and genitive both signify *from* : but they differ in this, the nominative belongs to a *verb*, the genitive to a *noun*.

- 49 The *dative* is formed by the suffix *bi*, often changed into *i* : as, tū, *you*, dat. tī-bi; trāb-, dat. trāb-i.

The dative answers to the question *where*, and is translated by *at* or *in* : as, Sulmōn-i, *at Sulmon*; ālī-bi, *in another place*. It is used also for *to*, if there is no motion : as, haeret tibi, *it clings to you*.

- 50 The ablative was originally the same as the dative; but the *i* is often changed into an *ē* : as, crude form, trāb-, abl. trāb-ē; or lost altogether, leaving the preceding vowel long : as, āla-, *wing*, abl. ālā.

The ablative often agrees in meaning with the dative : as, D. rūr-i, or Ab. rūr-ē, *in the country*; D. Sulmōn-i, or Ab. Sulmōn-ē, *at Sulmon*.

- 52 *Number*.—The *plural* is generally marked in English by *s* or *en* : as, *dogs, oxen*; in Latin sometimes by *s*, sometimes by *um*. These suffixes are added to the case-suffixes; as in the genitives servō-r†-um for servō-'s-um, *of slaves*; rē-r‡-um for rē-'s-um, *of things*; or in the datives, vō-bī-s, rē-bū-s.

- 53 In adding these case-suffixes and plural-suffixes to the crude forms, some changes take place, particularly if the crude form end in a vowel.

- 54 These changes depend chiefly upon the last letter of the noun. Nouns are therefore divided, according to the last letter, into *de-
clensions*.

* The English language has the accusative suffix in *him*, the accusative of *he*; and in *whom*, the accusative of *who*.

† The English language has the genitive suffix in *his*, the genitive of *he*; and in *whose*, the genitive of *who*.

‡ The *r* for *s* in the genitive is seen in the English genitives *her* and *their*.

CONSONANT (or THIRD)* DECLENSION.

55

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Latin C.F. Gender. English.	Trāb- fem. <i>beam.</i>	Princēp- masc. or fem. <i>first, chief.</i>	Aucēp- masc. or fem. <i>bird-catcher.</i>	Rēg- masc. <i>king.</i>	Nūc- fem. <i>nut.</i>
Singular.					
<i>Nom.</i>	trabs	princeps	auceps	rex	nux
<i>Voc.</i>	trabs	princeps	auceps	rex	nux
<i>Acc.</i>	trābem	principem	aucūpem	rēgem	nūcem
<i>Gen.</i>	trābīs	principīs	aucūpīs	rēgīs	nūcīs
<i>Dat.</i>	trābī	principī	aucūpī	rēgī	nūcī
<i>Abl.</i>	trābē	principē	aucūpē	rēgē	nūcē
Plural.					
<i>Nom.</i>	trābēs	principēs	aucūpēs	rēgēs	nūcēs
<i>Voc.</i>	trābēs	principēs	aucūpēs	rēgēs	nūcēs
<i>Acc.</i>	trābēs	principēs	aucūpēs	rēgēs	nūcēs
<i>Gen.</i>	trābum	principum	aucūpum	rēgum	nūcum
<i>Dat.</i>	trābībūs	principībūs	aucūpībūs	rēgībūs	nūcībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	trābībūs	principībūs	aucūpībūs	rēgībūs	nūcībūs

Latin c.f. Gender. English.	Lāpīd- masc. <i>a stone.</i>	Custōd- masc. or fem. <i>guard.</i>	Āriēt- masc. <i>ram.</i>	Cōm-īt- masc. or fem. <i>companion.</i>	Aetāt- fem. <i>age.</i>
Singular.					
<i>Nom.</i>	lāpīs	custōs	āriēs	cōmēs	aetās
<i>Voc.</i>	lāpīs	custōs	āriēs	cōmēs	aetās
<i>Acc.</i>	lāpidem	custōdem	āriētem	cōmītem	aetātem
<i>Gen.</i>	lāpidīs	custōdīs	āriētīs	cōmītīs	aetātīs
<i>Dat.</i>	lāpidī	custōdī	āriētī	cōmītī	aetātī
<i>Abl.</i>	lāpidē	custōdē	āriētē	cōmītē	aetātē
Plural.					
<i>Nom.</i>	lāpidēs	custōdēs	āriētēs	cōmītēs	aetātēs
<i>Voc.</i>	lāpidēs	custōdēs	āriētēs	cōmītēs	aetātēs
<i>Acc.</i>	lāpidēs	custōdēs	āriētēs	cōmītēs	aetātēs
<i>Gen.</i>	lāpidum	custōdum	āriētum	cōmītum	aetātum
<i>Dat.</i>	lāpidībūs	custōdībūs	āriētībūs	cōmītībūs	aetātībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	lāpidībūs	custōdībūs	āriētībūs	cōmītībūs	aetātībūs

* The numbers of the declensions are given, because they are so arranged in nearly all grammars and dictionaries.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS—(continued).

Latin c.p. Gender. English.	Mōs- masc. <i>custom.</i>	Pulvīs- masc. <i>dust.</i>	Pătēr- masc. <i>father.</i>	Clāmōr- masc. <i>shout.</i>	Hiēm- fem. <i>winter.</i>
Singular. <i>Nom.</i> <i>Voc.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	mōs mōs mōrem mōris mōri mōrē	pulvīs pulvīs pulvērem pulvēris pulvēri pulvērē	pătēr pătēr pătrem pătris pătri pătrē	clāmōr clāmōr clāmōrem clāmōris clāmōri clāmōrē	hiēmps hiēmps hiēmēm hiēmīs hiēmi hiēmē
Plural. <i>Nom.</i> <i>Voc.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	mōrēs mōrēs mōrēs mōrum mōribūs mōribūs	No Plural.*	pătrēs pătrēs pătrēs pătrum pătribūs pătribūs	clāmōrēs clāmōrēs clāmōrēs clāmōrum clāmōribūs clāmōribūs	hiēmēs hiēmēs hiēmēs hiēmum hiēmibūs hiēmibūs

Latin c.p. Gender. English.	Sōl- masc. <i>sun.</i>	Consūl- masc. <i>consul.</i>	Rătīōn- fem. <i>account.</i>	Ordōn- masc. <i>rank.</i>	Sanguīn- masc. <i>blood.</i>
Singular. <i>Nom.</i> <i>Voc.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	sōl sōl sōlem sōlis sōli sōlē	consūl consūl consūlem consūlis consūli consūlē	rătīō rătīō rătīōnem rătīōnis rătīōni rătīōnē	ordō ordō ordinem ordinis ordini ordinē	sanguīs sanguīs sanguīnem sanguīnis sanguīni sanguīnē
Plural. <i>Nom.</i> <i>Voc.</i> <i>Acc.</i> <i>Gen.</i> <i>Dat.</i> <i>Abl.</i>	sōlēs sōlēs sōlēs —† sōlibūs sōlibūs	consūlēs consūlēs consūlēs consūlum consūlibūs consūlibūs	rătīōnēs rătīōnēs rătīōnēs rătīōnum rătīōnibūs rătīōnibūs	ordīnēs ordīnēs ordīnēs ordīnum ordīnibūs ordīnibūs	No Plural.

* An acc. pulvērēs in Horace.

† Not found.

NEUTER NOUNS.

56

Neuter nouns differ from others only in the N., V., and Acc., which are always alike. In the singular these cases are nearly always short in the last syllable, and in the plural always end in *ā*.

Latin c.f. English.	Nōmēn- name.	Opēs- work.	Frigōs- cold.	Rōbōr- hardness.	Cāpūt- head.
Singular.					
<i>Nom.</i>	nōmēn	ōpūs	frigūs	rōbūr	cāpūt
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmēn	ōpūs	frigūs	rōbūr	cāpūt
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmēn	ōpūs	frigūs	rōbūr	cāpūt
<i>Gen.</i>	nōmīnīs	ōpērīs	frigōrīs	rōbōrīs	cāpītīs
<i>Dat.</i>	nōmīnī	ōpērī	frigōrī	rōbōrī	cāpītī
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmīnē	ōpērē	frigōrē	rōbōrē	cāpītē
Plural.					
<i>Nom.</i>	nōmīnā	ōpērā	frigōrā	rōbōrā	cāpītā
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmīnā	ōpērā	frigōrā	rōbōrā	cāpītā
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmīnā	ōpērā	frigōrā	rōbōrā	cāpītā
<i>Gen.</i>	nōmīnum	ōpērum	frigōrum	rōbōrum	cāpītum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōmīnībūs	ōpērībūs	frigōrībūs	rōbōrībūs	cāpītībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmīnībūs	ōpērībūs	frigōrībūs	rōbōrībūs	cāpītībūs

Latin c.f. English.	Ubēr- stream.	Os- mouth.	Oss- bone.	Crūs- leg.	Cord- heart.
Singular.					
<i>Nom.</i>	ūbēr	ōs	ōs	crūs	cōr
<i>Voc.</i>	ūbēr	ōs	ōs	crūs	cōr
<i>Acc.</i>	ūbēr	ōs	ōs	crūs	cōr
<i>Gen.</i>	ūbērīs	ōrīs	ossīs	crūrīs	cordīs
<i>Dat.</i>	ūbērī	ōrī	ossi	crūrī	cordī
<i>Abl.</i>	ūbērē	ōrē	ossē	crūrē	cordē
Plural.					
<i>Nom.</i>	ūbērā	ōrā	ossā	crūrā	cordā
<i>Voc.</i>	ūbērā	ōrā	ossā	crūrā	cordā
<i>Acc.</i>	ūbērā	ōrā	ossā	crūrā	cordā
<i>Gen.</i>	ūbērum	— *	ossium†	crūrum	— *
<i>Dat.</i>	ūbērībūs	ōrībūs	ossībūs	crūrībūs	cordībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	ūbērībūs	ōrībūs	ossībūs	crūrībūs	cordībūs

* Not found.

† Observe the irregular *ī*.

57 *Remarks on the Consonant Declension.*

- The nominative, as has been already said, is most regularly formed by the addition of *s*: as, *trāb-*, *beam*, N. *trabs*.
- 58 If the crude form end in *g* or *c*, *x* is written instead of *gs* or *cs*: as, *rēg-*, *king*, N. *rex*; *nūc-*, *nut*, N. *nux*.
- 59 If the crude form end in *d* or *t*, this letter is omitted: as, *lāpīd-*, *stone*, N. *lāpis*; *cōmīt-*, *companion*, N. *cōmēs*.
- 62 If the crude form end in *r*, *l*, *n*, the *s* is omitted: as, *pătēr-*, *father*, N. *pătēr*.
- 63 If the crude form end in *ōn* or *ōn*, the *n* also is omitted: as, *hōmōn-*, *human being*; *rătīōn-*, *an account*; N. *hōmō*, *rătīō*.
- 66 If the word be neuter, the *s* is not added: as, *hālēc-*, *a herring*, N. *hālēc*. Many adjectives, however, take the *s* even for the neuter N., V., Ac.: as, *fērōc-*, *haughty*; *praesent-*, *present*; N., V., Ac. neut. *fērox*, *praesens*.
- 70 The C.F. of comparative adjectives ends in *iōs*; whence the neuter N., V., Ac. end in *iūs*, the masc. and fem. N. and V. in *iōr*: as, *mēliōs-*, *better*; N. and V. m. and f. *mēliōr*; N., V., Ac. neut. *mēliūs*.
- 71 *When the nominative is left with a single consonant at the end, the quantity of the preceding vowel generally remains as in the crude form: as, *sālūt-*, *safety*; *custōd-*, *keeper*; N. *sālūs*, *custōs*. On the other hand, *ānāt-*, *duck*; *lāpīd-*, *stone*; *pătēr-*, *father*, have in the N. *ānās*, *lāpis*, *pătēr*.
- 72 But the crude forms in *ōr* have a short nominative and vocative: as, *clāmōr-*, *a shout*, N. and V. *clāmōr*.
- 73 Crude forms in *s* coexist for the most part with crude forms in *r*: as, *arbōs-* or *arbōr-*, *a tree*; *ōdōs-* or *ōdōr-*, *scent*. Of these, the form with *r* is preferred in those cases where a vowel follows: as, *G. arbōris*, *of a tree*; *ōdōris*, *of a scent*.
- 74 If the crude form end in *īs*, *ēr* takes its place in those cases where a vowel follows: as, *pulvīs-*, *dust*, *G. pulvērīs*.
- 75 If the crude form end in *ōn*, *ēn*, *ūt*, &c., the short vowel is often changed into *ī* in those cases where a vowel follows: as, *ordōn-*, *rank*; *cāpūt-*, *head*; *G. ordīnīs*, *cāpītīs*. *Cārōn-*, *flesh*, drops the vowel altogether in those cases: as, *G. carnīs*.

* In old writers, nominatives which should be short according to this rule are at times long: as, *pătēr*, like the Greek. Nay, the nominatives *āēr*, *sōnīpēs*, *ābiēs*, *āriēs*, *pāriēs*, *Cērēs*, *sanguīs*, *pulvīs*, from the crude forms *āēr-*, *sōnīpēd-*, *ābiēt-*, *āriēt-*, *pāriēt-*, *Cērēs-*, *sanguīn-*, *pulvīs-*, are common.

VOWEL DECLENSIONS.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Last let. Declen.	a 1	o 2	i 3	u 4	e 5
Latin. Gender. English.	Ala- fem. <i>wing.</i>	Hāmo- masc. <i>hook.</i>	Avi- fem. <i>bird.</i>	Acu- fem. <i>needle.</i>	Re- fem. <i>thing.</i>
Sing.					
<i>Nom.</i>	ālă	hāmŭs	ăvīs	ăcŭs	rēs
<i>Voc.</i>	ālă	hāmě	ăvīs	ăcŭs	rēs
<i>Acc.</i>	ālam	hāmum	ăvim, ăvem	ăcum	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ālae	hāmī	ăvīs	ăcŭs	rēi, rē
<i>Dat.</i>	ālae	hāmō	ăvī	ăcui, ăcū	rēi, rē
<i>Abl.</i>	ālă	hāmō	ăvī, ăvē	ăcū	rē
Plural.					
<i>Nom.</i>	ālae	hāmī	ăvēs	ăcŭs	rēs
<i>Voc.</i>	ālae	hāmī	ăvēs	ăcŭs	rēs
<i>Acc.</i>	ālās	hāmōs	ăvīs, ăvēs	ăcŭs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ālărūm	hāmōrum	ăvium	ăcum	rērūm
<i>Dat.</i>	ālīs	hāmīs	ăvībŭs	ăcŭbŭs	rēbŭs
<i>Abl.</i>	ālīs	hāmīs	ăvībŭs	ăcŭbŭs	rēbŭs

NEUTER NOUNS.

Last letter. Declension.	a 1	o 2	i 3	u 4	e 5
Latin. English.	There are no neuters of this declen- sion.	Bello- war.	Mări- sea.	Cornu- horn.	There are no neuters of this declen- sion.
Singular.					
<i>Nom.</i>		bellum	măřě	cornŭ	
<i>Voc.</i>		bellum	măřě	cornŭ	
<i>Acc.</i>		bellum	măřě	cornŭ	
<i>Gen.</i>		bellī	măřīs	[cornŭs]†	
<i>Dat.</i>		bellō	măřī	cornui, cornŭ	
<i>Abl.</i>		bellō	măřī*	cornŭ	
Plural.					
<i>Nom.</i>		bellă	măřiă	cornuă	
<i>Voc.</i>		bellă	măřiă	cornuă	
<i>Acc.</i>		bellă	măřiă	cornuă	
<i>Gen.</i>		bellōrum	măřium	cornuum	
<i>Dat.</i>		bellīs	măřībŭs	cornŭbŭs†	
<i>Abl.</i>		bellīs	măřībŭs	cornŭbŭs†	

* Rarely măřě, Ov. Trist. v. 2, 20.

† Not found.

‡ Or cornībŭs.

Remarks on the First, or A Declension.

- 98 G. pl. The plural genitive sometimes has a short form: *as*, *caeliċōla-*, *inhabitant of heaven*, gen. pl. *caeliċōlum*, instead of *caeliċōlārum*.
- 99 D. and Ab. pl. The dative and ablative have an old form in *ūs*: *as*, *ēqua-*, *a mare*, D. and Ab. *ēquābūs*. This form is often retained to distinguish the sex; otherwise *ēquo-*, *a horse*, and *ēquā-*, *a mare*, would have the same dative and ablative plural.

Remarks on the Second, or O Declension.

- 102 N. and Ac. The nominative and accusative prefer an *o*, if *u* or *v* precede: *as*, *āvō-*, *grandfather*, N. *āvōs*, Ac. *āvom*; otherwise *u* is preferred: *as*, *hāmo-*, *hook*, N. *hāmūs*, A. *hāmum*.
- 104 N. and V. If the crude form of a masculine noun end in *ro*, the N. and V. often drop the letters that follow *r*: *as*, *libēro-*, *inner bark* or *book*, N. and V. *libēr*.
- 106 V. The vocative from proper names in *io* contracts *iŕ* into *ī*: *as*, *Antōnio-*, V. *Antōnī*. So *gēnio-*, *a guardian spirit*, V. *gēnī*; *filio-*, *son*, V. *filī*.
- 110 G. and D. The following adjectives form their genitives in *ūs*, their datives in *ī*, for the masculine, feminine, and neuter, though some of them have occasionally the more common forms.

C.F.	G.	D.	C.F.	G.	D.
eo-	ējūs	eī	ipso-	ipsiūs	ipsī
quo- or	quōiūs or	quoi or	ālio-	āliūs	āliī
cu-	cūjūs	cui	altēro-	altērīūs	altērī
ūtēro-	ūtriūs	ūtrī	ūno-	ūniūs	ūnī
neutēro-	neutrīūs	neutrī	ullo-	ulliūs	ullī
ho-	hūjūs	huī-c	nullo-	nulliūs	nullī
isto-	istiūs	istī	sōlo-	sōliūs	sōlī
illo-	illiūs	illī	tōto-	tōtiūs	tōtī *

* These words may be recollected by the following rhymes:

iūs and ī, from ālio-, altēro-,
sōlo-, tōto-, ūtēro-, neutēro-,

eo- and quo-, ūno- and ullo-,
ho-, isto-, illo-, ipso- and nullo-.

Many of these genitives in *i*us are found in poetry with a short penult, as *illius*; but the genitive *alii*s (contracted from *alii*us) is always long. *Alterius* with a long *i* is found in poetry. In prose it is usual to pronounce the *i* short: *alterius*.

G. Substantives in *io* contract *i* in the genitive into *i*: as, 112 *otio*-, *leisure*, G. *oti*.

D. Names of places form a dative in *i* with the meaning *at*: as, 114 *Mileto*-, *the town Miletus*, D. *Mileti*, *at Miletus*; so *humo*-, *ground*, D. *humi*, *on the ground*; *domo*-, *house*, D. *domi*, *at home*; *bello*-, *war*, D. *belli*, *in war*.

G. pl. The plural genitive sometimes has a short form: as, *deo*-, 118 *a god*, gen. pl. *deorum* or *deum*.

Four neuters in *o* take a *d* in the N. and Ac. singular: *quo*-, 123 *quod*; *isto*-, *istud*; *illo*-, *illud*; *alio*-, *aliud*.

IRREGULAR O DECLENSION.

Latin c.f. Gender. English.	Puero- masc. boy.	Viro- masc. man.	Lybero- masc. inner bark.	Filio- masc. son.
Singular.				
Nom.	puer	vir	lyber	filius
Voc.	puer	vir	lyber	filii
Acc.	puerum	virum	lybrum	filium
Gen.	pueri	virii	lybri	filii or filii
Dat.	puero	virō	lybro	filio
Abl.	puero	virō	lybro	filio
Plural.				
Nom.	pueri	virii	lybri	filii
Voc.	pueri	virii	lybri	filii
Acc.	pueros	viros	lybros	filios
Gen.	puerorum	virorum	lybrorum	filiorum
Dat.	pueris	viris	lybris	filiis
Abl.	pueris	viris	lybris	filiis

Remarks on the Third, or I Declension.

Many words belong partly to the *i* declension, partly to the 125 consonant declension: as, *urb*- or *urbi*-, *a city*. In such words

the singular is generally formed according to the consonant declension, the plural according to the *i* declension.

- 126 Many words belong partly to the *i* declension, partly to the *e* declension: as, nūbe- or nūbi-, *cloud*. The forms from *e* are seldom used except in the nom., voc., and acc. But fāme- or fāmi-, *hunger*, has an Ab. fāmē with the *e* long, as in the *e* declension.
- 127 N. and V. If a crude form end in *ri*, the letters which should follow *r* are often dropped in the nom. and voc.: as, lintēri-, *a wherry*, N. and V. lintēr; Arāri-, *a river in Gallia*, N. and V. Arār or Arāris.
- 128 N. and V. Some adjectives ending in *ēri* have both forms: as, ācēri-, *sharp*, N. and V. ācēr for the masculine, ācris for the feminine; but ācris is sometimes used even for the masculine.
- 129 If the crude form end in *ēri*, the *e* is often dropped in those cases which do not end in *er*: as, lintēri-, *wherry*, G. lintrīs.
- 130 N. and V. If the crude form end in *li*, the letters which should follow *l* in the N. and V. are sometimes dropped: as, vīgīli-, *a night-sentinel*, N. and V. vīgīl. This word is in origin an adjective.
- 131 N., V., Ac. If the crude form of a neuter substantive end in *āri* or *ālī*, the N., V., Ac. generally drop the final *ē* and shorten the *a*: as, calcāri-, *spur*, N., V., Ac. calcār. Such words are in origin neuter adjectives.
- 132 N. and Ac. Two neuters in *i* take a *d* in the N. and Ac. singular: qui-, quīd; i-, īd.
- 133 Ac. Adjectives prefer the accusative in *em* to that in *im*: as, lēni-, *smooth*, Ac. masc. and fem. lēnem.
- 136 Ab. Neuter substantives and adjectives of all genders prefer the ablative in *ī* to that in *ē*: as, mări-, *sea*, Ab. mārī; lēni-, *smooth*, Ab. lēnī. But adjectives used as masc. or fem. substantives have both ablatives: as, affini-, *a relative by marriage*, Ab. affinī or affinē.
- 137 G. pl. Some nouns drop the *i* in the G. pl.: as, cāni-, *dog*; jūvēni-, *young man*; cēlēri-, *quick*; G. pl. cānum, jūvēnum, cēlērum. This is often the case in poetry: as, āgresti-, *rustic*, G. pl. āgrestium, or in poetry āgrestum.

Lat. c.f. Gender. English.	Lintēri- fem. <i>wherry.</i>	Vīgīli- masc. <i>a night-sentinel.</i>	Affīni- mas. or fem. <i>relative by marriage.</i>	Ānīmāli- neut. <i>living being.</i>	Calcāri- neut. <i>spur.</i>
Sing.					
Nom.	lintēr	vīgīl	affīnīs	ānīmāl	calcār
Voc.	lintēr	vīgīl	affīnīs	ānīmāl	calcār
Acc.	lintrem	vīgīlem	affīnem	ānīmāl	calcār
Gen.	lintrīs	vīgīlīs	affīnīs	ānīmālīs	calcārīs
Dat.	lintrī	vīgīlī	affīnī	ānīmālī	calcārī
Abl.	lintrī or lintrē	vīgīlī or vīgīlē	affīnī or affīnē	ānīmālī or ānīmālē	calcārī or calcārē
Plural.					
Nom.	lintrēs	vīgīlēs	affīnēs	ānīmālīā	calcārīā
Voc.	lintrēs	vīgīlēs	affīnēs	ānīmālīā	calcārīā
Acc.	lintrīs or lintrēs	vīgīlīs or vīgīlēs	affīnīs or affīnēs	ānīmālīā	calcārīā
Gen.	lintrium	vīgīlum*	affīnium	ānīmālīum	calcārīum
Dat.	lintribūs	vīgīlibūs	affīnībūs	ānīmālībūs	calcārībūs
Abl.	lintribūs	vīgīlibūs	affīnībūs	ānīmālībūs	calcārībūs

Remarks on the Fourth, or U Declension.

Two monosyllabic nouns, *su-*, a boar or sow, *gru-*, a crane, are 140 not contracted like the longer nouns of this declension, and are therefore declined as in the consonant declension; but *su-* has both *sūbūs* and *suībūs* in the D. and Ab. pl.

Many crude forms in *u* coexist with crude forms in *o*: as, 141 *lauro-* or *lauru-*, *laurel*. Hence the genitives *Sēnāti*, *tūmulti*, &c. as well as *Sēnātūs*, *tūmultūs*, &c. are found.

G. From *ānu-*, an old woman, the uncontracted Gen. *ānuīs* is 142 used.

G. pl. One *u* is sometimes omitted in the G. pl.: as *curru-*, 143 *chariot*, G. pl. *curruum*, or in poetry *currum*.

D. and Ab. pl. Many words change the penult *ū* into *ī*: as, 144 *cornu-*, *horn*, D. and Ab. pl. *cornībūs*.

* Observe the omission of the *i* before the *u*.

Remarks on the Fifth, or E Declension.

- 145 Many crude forms in *e* coexist with crude forms in *a* : as, mā-
tēria- or mātērie-, *timber*.
- 147 G. and D. The penult *e* in the G. and D. was originally long in
all the nouns of this declension ; but if no *i* precede, it is con-
sidered to be short in prose : as, from fide-, *faith*, G. and D. fidēi ;
but from die-, *day*, G. and D. diēi.
- 148 Few nouns in *e* have a plural, and still fewer a G., D., and
Ab. pl.

148*

MIXED DECLENSIONS.

Latin. English.	Consonant and <i>i</i> .		<i>i</i> and <i>e</i> .	
	urb- or urbi-, <i>f.</i> <i>city</i> .	part- or parti-, <i>f.</i> <i>part</i> .	nūbi- or nūbe-, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud</i> .	torqui- or torque-, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> <i>twisted chain</i> .
Sing. <i>Nom.</i>	urbs	pars	nūbēs or nūbīs	torquēs or torquīs
<i>Voc.</i>	urbs	pars	nūbēs	torquēs
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	partem*	nūbem	torquem
<i>Gen.</i>	urbīs	partīs	nūbīs	torquīs
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	partī	nūbī	torquī
<i>Ab.</i>	urbē	partē	nūbē	torquē
Plural. <i>Nom.</i>	urbēs	partēs	nūbēs	torquēs
<i>Voc.</i>	urbēs	partēs	nūbēs	torquēs
<i>Acc.</i>	urbīs or urbēs	partīs or partēs	nūbīs or nūbēs	torquīs or torquēs
<i>Gen.</i>	urbium	partium	nūbium	torquium
<i>Dat.</i>	urbībūs	partībūs	nūbībūs	torquībūs
<i>Ab.</i>	urbībūs	partībūs	nūbībūs	torquībūs

* Rarely partim.

	<i>e</i> and <i>a</i> .	<i>a</i> and <i>o</i> .	<i>o</i> and <i>u</i> .
Latin. English.	mătēria- or mătērie-, <i>f.</i> <i>timber.</i>	bōno- or bōna- <i>good.</i>	fico- or ficu-, <i>f.</i> <i>a fig-tree.</i>
Sing. <i>Nom.</i>	mătēries or mătēriă	See Adjectives, § 212.	ficūs
<i>Voc.</i>	_____		_____
<i>Acc.</i>	mătēriem or mătēriam		ficum
<i>Gen.</i>	_____ mătēriae		fici or ficūs
<i>Dat.</i>	_____ mătēriae		ficō or ficuī
<i>Abl.</i>	mătēriē or mătēriă		ficō or ficū
Plural. <i>Nom.</i>	No Plural.		fici or ficūs
<i>Voc.</i>			_____
<i>Acc.</i>			ficōs or ficūs
<i>Gen.</i>			ficōrum or ficuum
<i>Dat.</i>			ficīs or ficūbūs
<i>Abl.</i>			ficīs or ficūbūs

DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Some nouns are not declined: *as*, nihīl, *nothing*; *fās*, *permitted* 149 *by Heaven*; *nēquam*, *good for nothing*; *quōt*, *how many*; *tōt*, *so many*; and the cardinal numerals from *quattuor*, *four*, to *centum*, *a hundred*, inclusive.

Some want the plural: *as*, *sēnectūt*-, *old age*; *vēr*-, *n. spring*; 150 *sūperbia*-, *pride*; *prōle*-, *offspring*; *auro*-, *n. gold*; *ōleo*-, *n. oil*.

Some want the singular: *as*, *tēnēbra*-, *N. pl. tēnēbrae*, *dark-* 151 *ness*; *castro*-, *n.*, *N. pl. castrā*, *a camp*; *armo*-, *n.*, *N. pl. armă*, *arms*; *Pūteōlo*-, *N. pl. Pūteōli*, (*wells*), the name of a town.

Some have both singular and plural, but with different meanings: *as*,

	Sing.	Plur.
aedi- or aede-	<i>a room or temple,</i>	<i>a house.</i>
āqua-	<i>water,</i>	<i>medicinal springs.</i>
auxilio- <i>n.</i>	<i>help,</i>	<i>allied troops.</i>
cōpia-	<i>abundance,</i>	<i>military forces.</i>
fini-	<i>end,</i>	<i>boundaries, territory.</i>
fortūna-	<i>fortune,</i>	<i>property.</i>

	Sing.	Plur.
grātia-	<i>favour,</i>	<i>thanks.</i>
litēra-	<i>a letter of the alphabet,</i>	<i>a letter or epistle.</i>
ōpera-	<i>work, assistance,</i>	<i>labourers.</i>

- 153 Some nouns are deficient in one or more cases: thus, *vīc*-, *turn*, has no N. or D. sing.
- 154 Some nouns form their cases partly from one crude form, partly from another. Thus, *volgēs*-, *n.*, *mob*, supplies a N., V., Ac. sing. *volgūs*, and *volgo*-, *n.*, the G., D., Ab. sing.; *ītēr*-, *n.*, *route*, supplies a N., V., Ac. sing., *ītīnēr*-, *n.*, the other cases; *præcēp*-, *head-foremost*, supplies *præceps* for the N. and V. sing. of all genders, and the Ac. neut. sing., the other cases being formed from *præcīpīt*-.
- 155 Some nouns have one gender in the singular, another in the plural. Thus,
- | | | |
|---------|------------------|---|
| die- | <i>day,</i> | is <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> in the singular, but <i>m.</i> in the plural. |
| caelo- | <i>air, sky,</i> | is <i>n.</i> _____ <i>m.</i> _____ |
| frēno- | <i>bridle,</i> | is <i>n.</i> _____ <i>m.</i> or <i>n.</i> _____ |
| rastro- | <i>rake,</i> | is <i>n.</i> _____ <i>m.</i> or <i>n.</i> _____ |
| jōco- | <i>joke,</i> | is <i>m.</i> _____ <i>m.</i> or <i>n.</i> _____ |
| lōco- | <i>place,</i> | is <i>m.</i> _____ <i>m.</i> or <i>n.</i> _____ |
- 156 Some adjectives are deficient in gender. Thus, *mēmōr*-, *mindful*, *pauper*-, *earning-little*, have no neuter; *victric*- or *victrici*-, *victorious*, is only fem. in the sing., only fem. or neut. in the plur.

Some Irregular Nouns declined.

- 157 Bōv-, *ox* or *cow*. N. V. *bōs*; Ac. *bōvem*; G. *bōvīs*; D. *bōvī*; Ab. *bōvē*. Pl. N. V. Ac. *bōvēs*; G. *bōvum* or *boum*; D. and Ab. *bōbūs* or *būbūs*.
- 158 Deo-, *God*. N. V. *Deūs*; Ac. *Deum*; G. *Deī*; D. Ab. *Deō*. Pl. N. V. *Deī*, *Dīī*, or rather *Dī*; Ac. *Deōs*; G. *Deōrum* or *Deum*; D. Ab. *Deīs*, *Dīīs*, or rather *Dīs*.
- 159 Dōmo- or dōmu-, *f., house*. N. V. *dōmūs*; Ac. *dōmum*; G. *dōmūs*, rarely *dōmī*; D. *dōmūī*, *dōmō*, with *dōmī*, *at home*; Ab. *dōmū* or *dōmō*. Pl. N. V. *dōmūs*; Ac. *dōmūs* or *dōmōs*; G. *dōmuum* or *dōmōrum*; D. Ab. *dōmībūs*.
- 160 Jov-pītēr- (=pater). N. V. *Juppītēr* or *Jūpītēr*; Ac. *Jōvem*; G. *Jōvīs*; D. *Jōvī*; Ab. *Jōvē*.

- Jus-jūrando-, *n.*, *oath* (really two words). N. V. Ac. jus-jūrandum; 161
G. jūris-jūrandī; D. jūri-jūrandō; Ab. jūrē-jūrandō.
- Nīg- or nīv-, *snow*. N. V. nix; Ac. nīvem; G. nīvis; D. nīvi; 162
Abl. nīvē. Pl. N. Ac. nīvēs; Ab. nīvībūs.
- Re-publica-, *common-wealth* (really two words). N. V. res-publicā; 163
Ac. rem-publicam; G. D. rei-publicae; Ab. rē-publicā, &c.
Pl. Ac. res-publicās; G. rērum-publicārum; Ab. rēbus-publicis.
- Sēnēc- or sēn-, *an old man*. N. V. sēnex; Ac. sēnem; G. sēnis; 164
D. sēni; Ab. sēnē. Pl. N. V. Ac. sēnēs; G. sēnum; D. Ab.
sēnībūs.
- Vīs-, vi-, or vīri-, *force*. N. V. vīs; G. vīs; Ac. vim; D. Ab. vī. 165
Pl. N. V. Ac. vīrēs; G. vīrium; D. Ab. vīrībūs.

Some Foreign Proper Names declined.

- Anchīsā- or Anchīsē-. N. Anchīsēs; V. Anchīsē or —a; Ac. An- 167
chīsēn or —am; G. D. Anchīsae; Ab. Anchīsē or —ā.
- Oreste- or —ta-. N. Orestēs; V. Orestā; Ac. Orestēn or —em; 168
G. D. Orestae; Ab. Orestē.
- Mēnandēro-. N. Mēnandrōs or —drūs or —dēr; V. Mēnandrē or 169
Mēnandēr; Ac. Mēnandrōn or —drum; G. Mēnandrū or —dri;
D. Ab. Mēnandrō.
- Pāri- or Pārid-. N. Pāris; V. Pāris or Pārī; Ac. Pārim or —īn, 174
Pāridēm or —dā; G. Pāridōs or —dīs; D. Pāridī or —dī;
Ab. Pāridē.
- Achillē-. N. Achillēs; V. Achillē; Ac. Achillēn or —an or —em; 175
G. Achilleōs, Achilleī, Achillīs, or rather Achillī; D. Achillēi
or —lei or —li; Ab. Achillē.
- Sōcrātēs- or Sōcrātē-. N. Sōcrātēs; V. Sōcrātēs or —tēs or —te; 179
A. Sōcrātēn or —tem; G. Sōcrātīs or rather Sōcrāti; D. Sō-
crāti; Ab. Sōcrātē.

GENDER.

The gender of a substantive may be determined partly by the 184
meaning, partly by the suffix or termination.

Males, months,* winds, and rivers, are generally masculine. 185

Females, countries,* islands,* and trees, are generally feminine. 186

* The names for the months are really adjectives agreeing with the
masculine noun *mensi*-, 'month,' understood. The names of countries
and islands are also often adjectives agreeing with the feminine nouns
terra-, 'land,' and *insūla*-, 'island.'

- 187 Nouns undeclined, words belonging to the other parts of speech used for the time as substantives, sentences used as substantives, and the produce of trees, are generally neuter.
- 188 Many substantives denote both the male and female, and are therefore called *common*: as, *săcerdôt-*, *priest* or *priestess*. These are for the most part really adjectives.
- 189 Sometimes there are two different words or two different terminations, one for the male, the other for the female: as, *tauro-*, *bull*, *vacca-*, *cow*; *ĕquo-*, *horŕe*, *ĕqua-*, *mare*.
- 190 At other times the natural gender of animals is forgotten for a fanciful gender. Thus, the words *volpe-*, *fox*; *căni-* or *căne-*, *dog*; *ănăt-*, *duck*, are generally considered to be feminine. On the contrary, *ansër-*, *goose*; *lĕpös-*, *hare*, are masculine. Those words, which under one grammatical gender are applied to both male and female, are called *epicenes*. If the real gender must be noticed, the words *măs-*, N. *măs*, *male*, and *fĕmĭna-*, *female*, are added.

MASCULINE SUFFIXES.

- 191 The following suffixes produce masculine nouns. They are arranged alphabetically according to their *last* letters.

Suffix	Added to	Gives a subst. meaning	Thus, from	English	Is derived	English
a*	verbs	one who —s	incöl-	<i>inhabit</i>	incöl-a-	<i>inhabitant.</i>
ta	—	a person	năvi-	<i>ship</i>	năvĭ-ta-	<i>sailor.</i>
ic	—	little	vort-	<i>turn</i>	vort-ĭc-	<i>eddy.</i>
ôn	—	man	năso-	<i>nose</i>	Năs-ôn-	<i>man with a nose.</i>
ot†	verbs	act	lud-	<i>play</i>	lūd-o-	<i>play.</i>
lo	nouns	little	servo-	<i>slave</i>	servö-lo-	<i>little slave.</i>
ŭlot†	verbs	—	tŭm-e-	<i>swell</i>	tŭm-ŭlo-	<i>mound.</i>
cŭlo	nouns	little	frătĕr-	<i>brother</i>	frătĕr-cŭlo-	<i>little brother.</i>
ĭnot†	—	—	—	—	ăs-ĭno-	<i>ass.</i>
ĕro	—	—	—	—	nŭm-ĕro-	<i>number.</i>
tĕro†	verbs	means	cöl-	<i>cut, dig</i>	cul-tĕro-	<i>ploughshare.</i>
to†	verbs	one —ed	lĕga-	<i>depute</i>	lĕgă-to-	<i>deputy.</i>
ör	verbs	—	tĭm-e-	<i>fear</i>	tĭm-ör-	<i>fear.</i>
tör	verbs	one who —s	ăra-	<i>plough</i>	ără-tör-	<i>ploughman.</i>
tu§	verbs	—ing	audi-	<i>hear</i>	audĭ-tu-	<i>hearing.</i>

* Words of this class may perhaps be considered as common, but the masculine is generally meant.

† See the neuter suffixes. ‡ These are really masculine participles.

§ These are often called supines.

FEMININE SUFFIXES.

Suffix	Added to	Gives a subst. meaning	Thus, from	English	Is derived	English
a	verbs	act	fŭg-	<i>fly</i>	fŭg-a-	<i>flight.</i>
ia	noun	quality	mīsĕro-	<i>wretched</i>	mīsĕr-ia-	<i>wretchedness.</i>
ĭtia	adj.	quality	āmīco-	<i>friendly</i>	āmīc-ĭtia-	<i>friendship.</i>
la	nouns	little	ānīma-	<i>breath</i>	ānīmŭ-la-	<i>little breath.</i>
ĕla	verbs	act	quĕr-(r.)	<i>complain</i>	quĕr-ĕla-	<i>complaint.</i>
tĕla	verbs	act	tue-(r.)	<i>guard</i>	tŭ-tĕla-	<i>protection.</i>
cŭla	nouns	little	sŏrŏr-	<i>sister</i>	sŏrŏr-cŭla-	<i>little sister.</i>
ma	verbs	act	fa-	<i>speak</i>	fā-ma-	<i>report.</i>
ĭna	—	—	pāte-	<i>be spread</i>	pāt-ĭna-	<i>dish.</i>
ina	male	female	rĕg-	<i>king</i>	rĕg-ina-	<i>queen.</i>
ina	verbs	act	ru-	<i>rush</i>	ru-ina-	<i>downfall.</i>
bra	verbs	—	lāt-e-	<i>lie hid</i>	lāt-ĕ-bra-	<i>hiding-place.</i>
ĕra	—	—	pāte-	<i>be spread</i>	pāt-ĕra-	<i>bowl.</i>
ŭra	verbs	act	fĭg-	<i>model</i>	fĭg-ŭra-	<i>shape.</i>
tŭra*	verbs	act	pĭg-	<i>paint</i>	pĭc-tŭra-	<i>painting.</i>
ta	verbs	act	vĭv-	<i>live</i>	vĭ-ta-	<i>life.</i>
ta	adj.	quality	jŭvĕni-	<i>young</i>	jŭvĕn-ta-	<i>youth.</i>
trĭc	verbs	female	vĭc-	<i>conquer</i>	vĭc-trĭc-	<i>conqueress.</i>
e	verbs	act	fĭd-	<i>trust</i>	fĭd-e-	<i>faith.</i>
ĭtie	adj.	quality	tristĭ-	<i>sad</i>	trist-ĭtie-	<i>sadness.</i>
ti	verbs	act	mŏr-(r.)	<i>die</i>	mŏrt-,mŏrti-	<i>death.</i>
dŏn	verbs?	quality	dulcĕ-	<i>be sweet</i>	dulcĕ-dŏn-	<i>sweetness.</i>
gŏn	verbs?	act	ŏri-(r.)	<i>rise</i>	ŏrĭ-gŏn-	<i>origin.</i>
tŭdŏn	adj.	quality	longo-	<i>long</i>	longĭ-tŭdŏn-	<i>length.</i>
iŏn	verbs	act	ŏpĭna-(r.)	<i>fancy.</i>	ŏpĭn-iŏn-	<i>opinion.</i>
tiŏn	verbs	act	dĭc-	<i>speak</i>	dĭc-tiŏn-	<i>speaking.</i>
tāt	nouns	quality	cĭvĭ-	<i>citizen</i>	cĭvĭ-tāt-	<i>citizenship.</i>
tŭt	nouns	quality	servo-	<i>slave</i>	servĭ-tŭt-	<i>slavery.</i>

Suffixes which denote an abstract quality or act are at times *193 used in the sense of collective nouns, as from

ĕquĭta-, *ride*; ĕquĭtā-tu-, *m. a body of riders, cavalry.*
 Itālo-, *an Italian*; Itālia-, *the body of Italians, Italy.*
 sĕqu-(r.), *follow*; sec-ta-, *a body of followers, a school.*
 gĕn-, *produce*; gen-ti- or gent-, *a race.*
 multo-, *many*; multĭ-tŭdŏn-, *a multitude, a mob.*
 lĕg-, *choose*; lĕg-iŏn-, *picked men, a legion.*
 cĭvĭ-, *citizen*; cĭvĭ-tāt-, *a body of citizens, a state.*
 nŏbĭli-, *noble*; nŏbĭlĭ-tāt-, *a body of nobles, a nobility.*
 jŭvĕni-, *young*; jŭvĕn-tŭt-, *a body of young men, youth.*

* Perhaps more immediately from nouns in tŏr, as from pĭc-tŏr-, *a painter*, pĭctŭr-ā, *painting*.

NEUTER SUFFIXES.

Suffix	Added to	Gives a subst. meaning	Thus, from	English	Is derived	English
li*	subst.	place, &c.	ānīma-	<i>life</i>	ānīmā-li-	<i>animal.</i>
ri*	subst.	place, &c.	pulvīno-	<i>cushion</i>	pulvīnā-ri-	<i>shrine.</i>
mēn	verbs	means	tēg-	<i>cover</i>	teg-mēn-	<i>covering.</i>
o	verbs	—	jūg-	<i>yoke</i>	jūg-o-	<i>yoke.</i>
io	verbs	act, &c.	gaud-e-	<i>rejoice</i>	gaud-io-	<i>joy.</i>
lo	nouns	little	palliō-	<i>cloak</i>	palliō-lo-	<i>little cloak.</i>
ūlo	verbs	means	jāc-	<i>throw</i>	jāc-ūlo-	<i>dart.</i>
būlo†	verbs	means	vēna-(r.)	<i>hunt</i>	vēnā-būlo-	<i>hunting-spear</i>
būlo†	subst.	means	tūs-	<i>incense</i>	tūr-ī-būlo-	<i>censer.</i>
cūlo‡	verbs	means	vēh-	<i>carry</i>	vēh-ī-cūlo-	<i>carriage.</i>
cūlo	nouns	little	ōpēs-	<i>work</i>	ōpus-cūlo-	<i>little work.</i>
īno	—	—	rēg-	<i>king</i>	reg-no-	<i>royal power.</i>
ēro	verbs	means	scalp-	<i>scratch</i>	scalp-ro-	<i>graving-tool.</i>
b'ro†	verbs	means	[cēr-]	<i>sift</i>	cīr-bro-	<i>sieve.</i>
c'ro‡	verbs	means	sēpēl-	<i>bury</i>	sēpul-cro-	<i>burial-place.</i>
t'ro	verbs	means	rād-	<i>scrape</i>	ras-tro-	<i>rake.</i>
to	verbs	thing done	lēga-	<i>leave</i>	lēgā-to-	<i>legacy.</i>
ēto	trees	collective	quercu-	<i>oak</i>	querc-ēto-	<i>oak-grove.</i>
mento	verbs	means	orna-	<i>equip</i>	ornā-mento-	<i>equipment.</i>
ēr §	verbs	—	[īt-] or i-	<i>go</i>	īt-ēr-	<i>route.</i>
ūr	verbs	—	fulg-	<i>shine</i>	fulg-ūr-	<i>lightning.</i>
ēs	verbs	—	gēn-	<i>produce</i>	gēn-ēs-	<i>race, birth.</i>
ōs	verbs	—	frīg-e-	<i>be cold</i>	frīg-ōs-	<i>cold.</i>

195 The tables of suffixes here given are far from sufficient to determine the gender of all words. Indeed, some of the suffixes will be found common to the masculine and neuter tables: as, *o*, *io*, *lo*, *ūlo*, *cūlo*, *īno*, *ēro*, *tēro*, *to*.

196 It will be observed that a large number of substantives in *a* are feminine. But the rule is not universal; as may be seen in the masculines: Sulla-, *the Roman dictator*; Matrōna-, *m., the river Marne*; nauta-, *sailor*.

* These are really neuter adjectives, and the two suffixes are closely related; *pulvināri-* being preferred to *pulvināli-*, because the word has already got an *l*.

† *būlo* and *b'ro* are probably the same suffix. This suffix also means *place*.

‡ The same may be said of *cūlo* and *c'ro*, and perhaps *t'ro*.

§ *ās*, *ēs*, *ōs*, *ūs*, together with *ār*, *ēr*, *ōr*, *ūr*, and *ūt*, are mere varieties of the same suffix.

Many adjectives are used as substantives, the real substantive 210 being understood. Thus :

Africa-, terra- *land* understood, *the land of the Afri*.

Stātuario-, masc. (*a man*) of *statues, a sculptor*.

Ovili-, neut. (*the place*) for *sheep, sheepfold*.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are declined for the most part like substantives. 211

Adjectives with crude forms in *o* for the masculine and neuter, 212 in *a* for the feminine, are often called adjectives of three terminations.

Bōno-, m. and n. ; *bōna*-, f. *good*.

213

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> bōnūs	bōnā	bōnum	<i>N.</i> bōnī	bōnae	bōnā
<i>V.</i> bōnē	bōnā	bōnum	<i>V.</i> bōnī	bōnae	bōnā
<i>Ac.</i> bōnum	bōnam	bōnum	<i>Ac.</i> bōnōs	bōnās	bōnā
<i>G.</i> bōnī	bōnae	bōnī	<i>G.</i> bōnōrum	bōnārum	bōnōrum
<i>D.</i> bōnō	bōnae	bōnō	<i>D.</i> bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs
<i>Ab.</i> bōnō	bōnā	bōnō	<i>Ab.</i> bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs

Aspēro-, m. and n. ; *aspēra*-, f. *rough*.

214

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> aspēr	aspērā	aspērum	<i>N.</i> aspērī	aspērae	aspērā
<i>V.</i> aspēr	aspērā	aspērum	<i>V.</i> aspērī	aspērae	aspērā
<i>Ac.</i> aspērum	aspēram	aspērum	<i>Ac.</i> aspērōs	aspērās	aspērā
<i>G.</i> aspērī	aspērae	aspērī	<i>G.</i> aspērōrum	aspērārum	aspērōrum
<i>D.</i> aspērō	aspērae	aspērō	<i>D.</i> aspērīs	aspērīs	aspērīs
<i>Ab.</i> aspērō	aspērā	aspērō	<i>Ab.</i> aspērīs	aspērīs	aspērīs

Atēro-, m. and n. ; *atra*-, f. *black*.

215

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> ātēr	ātrā	ātrum	<i>N.</i> ātrī	ātrae	ātrā
<i>V.</i> ātēr	ātrā	ātrum	<i>V.</i> ātrī	ātrae	ātrā
<i>Ac.</i> ātrum	ātram	ātrum	<i>Ac.</i> ātrōs	ātrās	ātrā
<i>G.</i> ātrī	ātrae	ātrī	<i>G.</i> ātrōrum	ātrārum	ātrōrum
<i>D.</i> ātrō	ātrae	ātrō	<i>D.</i> ātrīs	ātrīs	ātrīs
<i>Ab.</i> ātrō	ātrā	ātrō	<i>Ab.</i> ātrīs	ātrīs	ātrīs

- 216 Adjectives with crude form in *i* are often called adjectives of two terminations.

- 217 *Tristi-, bitter.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> tristī	tristī	tristē	<i>N.</i> tristēs	tristēs	tristiā
<i>V.</i> tristī	tristī	tristē	<i>V.</i> tristēs	tristēs	tristiā
<i>Ac.</i> tristem	tristem	tristē	<i>Ac.</i> tristīs or -ēs	tristīs or -ēs	tristiā
<i>G.</i> tristī	tristī	tristī	<i>G.</i> tristium	tristium	tristium
<i>D.</i> tristī	tristī	tristī	<i>D.</i> tristībūs	tristībūs	tristībūs
<i>Ab.</i> tristī	tristī	tristī	<i>Ab.</i> tristībūs	tristībūs	tristībūs

- 218 *Acēri-, sharp.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> ācēr or ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācriā
<i>V.</i> ācēr or ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācriā
<i>Ac.</i> ācrem	ācrem	ācrē	ācrīs or ācrēs	ācrīs or -ācrēs	ācriā
<i>G.</i> ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>D.</i> ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribūs	ācribūs	ācribūs
<i>Ab.</i> ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribūs	ācribūs	ācribūs

- 219 *Cēlēri-, quick.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> cēlēr or cēlērīs	cēlērīs	cēlērē	<i>N.</i> cēlērēs	cēlērēs	cēlēriā
<i>V.</i> cēlēr or cēlērīs	cēlērīs	cēlērē	<i>V.</i> cēlērēs	cēlērēs	cēlēriā
<i>Ac.</i> cēlērem	cēlērem	cēlērē	<i>Ac.</i> cēlērīs or cēlērīs or cēlērēs	cēlērēs	cēlēriā
<i>G.</i> cēlērīs	cēlērīs	cēlērīs	<i>G.</i> cēlērum	cēlērum	cēlērum
<i>D.</i> cēlēri	cēlēri	cēlēri	<i>D.</i> cēlēribūs	cēlēribūs	cēlēribūs
<i>Ab.</i> cēlēri	cēlēri	cēlēri	<i>Ab.</i> cēlēribūs	cēlēribūs	cēlēribūs

- 219* Adjectives with one crude form in a consonant, and another in *i*, form the singular from the first, the plural from the second: as,

Praesent- or praesenti-, *present*.*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> praesens	praesens	praesens
<i>V.</i> praesens	praesens	praesens
<i>Ac.</i> praesentem	praesentem	praesens
<i>G.</i> praesentis	praesentis	praesentis
<i>D.</i> praesentī	praesentī	praesentī
<i>Ab.</i> praesentī or praesentē	praesentī or praesentē	praesentī or praesentē

Plural.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> praesentēs	praesentēs	praesentiā
<i>V.</i> praesentēs	praesentēs	praesentiā
<i>Ac.</i> praesentis or praesentēs	praesentis or praesentēs	praesentiā
<i>G.</i> praesentium	praesentium	praesentium
<i>D.</i> praesentibūs	praesentibūs	praesentibūs
<i>Ab.</i> praesentibūs	praesentibūs	praesentibūs

Felic- or felici-, *fortunate*.*Singular.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> felix	felix	felix
<i>V.</i> felix	felix	felix
<i>Ac.</i> felicem	felicem	felix
<i>G.</i> feliciſ	feliciſ	feliciſ
<i>D.</i> felici	felici	felici
<i>Ab.</i> felici or felice	felici or felice	felici or felice

Plural.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> felicēs	felicēs	feliciā
<i>V.</i> felicēs	felicēs	feliciā
<i>Ac.</i> feliciſ or felicēs	feliciſ or felicēs	feliciā
<i>G.</i> felicium	felicium	felicium
<i>D.</i> feliciſbūs	feliciſbūs	feliciſbūs
<i>Ab.</i> feliciſbūs	feliciſbūs	feliciſbūs

Adjectives with the crude form in a consonant are often called 220 adjectives of one termination.

Vētēs-, *old*.

221

Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> vētūs	vētūs	vētūs
<i>V.</i> vētūs	vētūs	vētūs
<i>Ac.</i> vētērem	vētērem	vētūs
<i>G.</i> vētēris	vētēris	vētēris
<i>D.</i> vētēri	vētēri	vētēri
<i>Ab.</i> vētēre or vētēri	vētēre or vētēri	vētēre or vētēri

Plural.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> vētērēs	vētērēs	vētērā
<i>V.</i> vētērēs	vētērēs	vētērā
<i>Ac.</i> vētērēs	vētērēs	vētērā
<i>G.</i> vētērum	vētērum	vētērum
<i>D.</i> vētēribūs	vētēribūs	vētēribūs
<i>Ab.</i> vētēribūs	vētēribūs	vētēribūs

221*

Dīvīt-, *rich*.*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	dīvēs	dīvēs	dīvēs
<i>V.</i>	dīvēs	dīvēs	dīvēs
<i>Ac.</i>	dīvitem	dīvitem	dīvēs
<i>G.</i>	dīvītīs	dīvītīs	dīvītīs
<i>D.</i>	dīvītī	dīvītī	dīvītī
<i>Ab.</i>	dīvītī or dīvītē	dīvītī or dīvītē	dīvītī or dīvītē

Plural.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	dīvītēs	dīvītēs	<i>not found.</i>
<i>V.</i>	dīvītēs	dīvītēs	_____
<i>Ac.</i>	dīvītēs	dīvītēs	_____
<i>G.</i>	dīvītum	dīvītum	dīvītum
<i>D.</i>	dīvītībūs	dīvītībūs	dīvītībūs
<i>Ab.</i>	dīvītībūs	dīvītībūs	dīvītībūs

There is also in the poets a contracted form, dīt- or diti-; whence *N. m. f. dis*, *Ac. m. f. ditem*, &c.; but for the neuter of the *N.*, *V.*, *Ac. sing. dītē*, plur. *dītiā*.

222

Tristiōs- or tristiōr-, *bitterer or more bitter*.*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	tristiōr	tristiōr	tristiūs
<i>V.</i>	tristiōr	tristiōr	tristiūs
<i>Ac.</i>	tristiōrem	tristiōrem	tristiūs
<i>G.</i>	tristiōrīs	tristiōrīs	tristiōrīs
<i>D.</i>	tristiōrī	tristiōrī	tristiōrī
<i>Ab.</i>	tristiōrē*	tristiōrē*	tristiōrē*

Plural.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	tristiōrēs	tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
<i>V.</i>	tristiōrēs	tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
<i>Ac.</i>	tristiōrēs	tristiōrēs	tristiōrā
<i>G.</i>	tristiōrum	tristiōrum	tristiōrum
<i>D.</i>	tristiōrībūs	tristiōrībūs	tristiōrībūs
<i>Ab.</i>	tristiōrībūs	tristiōrībūs	tristiōrībūs

223

Many adjectives whose crude form ends in a consonant have no neuter nom., voc., acc.

* Seldom *tristiōrī*.

225. SUFFIXES OF ADJECTIVES.

Suffix	Added to	Gives an adjective meaning	Thus, from	English	Is derived	English
āc or āci	verbs	full	fēr-	<i>bear</i>	fēr-āci-	<i>fruitful.</i>
trīc or trīci	verbs	female agent	vīc-	<i>conquer</i>	vīc-trīci-	<i>victorious.</i>
li, —	verbs	fit to	ūt- (r.)	<i>use</i>	ūt-li-	<i>useful.</i>
—	nouns	like	quo- or qua-	<i>what</i>	quā-li-	<i>like what.</i>
(āli)	nouns	belonging to	flūvīo-	<i>river</i>	flūvīā-li-	<i>belonging to a river.</i>
blli	verbs	like, &c.	virgōn-	<i>maiden</i>	virgīn-āli-	<i>maiden-like.</i>
ri	nouns	fit to	āma-	<i>love</i>	āma-blli-	<i>lovely.</i>
(āri)	nouns	like, &c.	puella-	<i>girl</i>	puellā-ri-	<i>girl-like.</i>
ensi	nouns	like, &c.	Apollōn-	<i>Apollo</i>	Apollīn-āri-	<i>of Apollo.</i>
ti	nouns	belonging to	castro-, pl.	<i>camp</i>	castī-ensi-	<i>belonging to a camp.</i>
o	towns	belonging to	Arpīno-	<i>Arpinum</i>	Arpīnā-ti-	<i>belonging to Arpinum.</i>
īco	verbs	state	vīv-	<i>live</i>	vīv-o-	<i>alive.</i>
īdo	nouns	belonging to	civī-	<i>citizen</i>	civī-īco-	<i>of citizens.</i>
bundo	verbs	full	tīm-ē-	<i>fear</i>	tīm-īdo-	<i>fearful.</i>
cundo	verbs	full	lud-	<i>play</i>	lūdī-bundo-*	<i>full of play.</i>
eo	verbs	full	īra-sc- (r.)	<i>be angry</i>	īrā-cundo-*	<i>passionate.</i>
ceo	nouns	made of	oss-	<i>bone</i>	oss-eo-	<i>of bone.</i>
io	nouns	made of	membrāna-	<i>skin</i>	membrānā-ceo-	<i>of skin or parchment.</i>
io	verbs	—	ex-īm-	<i>take out</i>	ex-īm-io-	<i>select, excellent.</i>
īcio	nouns	belonging to	rēg-	<i>king</i>	rēg-īo-	<i>royal.</i>
ticio	nouns	belonging to	tribūno-	<i>tribune</i>	tribūn-īcio-	<i>of the tribunes.</i>
	verbs	that has been —ed	fāc-	<i>make</i>	fāc-ticio-	<i>artificial.</i>

* Or perhaps rather *lūd-īdo-undo*, *īrā-c-undo*, so that *īdo* and *c* may be separate suffixes. Compare *sec-undo* i. e. *sequ-endo*.

SUFFIXES OF ADJECTIVES—(continued).

Suffix	Added to	Gives an adjective meaning	Thus, from	English	Is derived	English
ilio	praenomen	a gentile name	Servio-	<i>Servius</i>	Servilio-	<i>name of a Roman gens.</i>
rio	nouns	belonging to	stātua-	<i>statue</i>	stātūa-rio-	<i>of statues, a sculptor.</i>
(ario)	nouns	belonging to	carbon-	<i>coal</i>	carbōn-ario-	<i>coal-(merchant).</i>
ŕlo	verbs	full	crēd-	<i>believe</i>	crēd-ŕlo-	<i>credulous.</i>
no, ŕno	verbs	state	plē-	<i>fill</i>	plē-no-	<i>full.</i>
no, ŕno	nouns	belonging to	Rōma-	<i>Rome</i>	Rōmā-no-	<i>belonging to Rome.</i>
(ano)	nouns	belonging to	mont-	<i>mountain</i>	mont-āno-	<i>of the mountains.</i>
(ino)	nouns	belonging to	ansēr-	<i>goose</i>	ansēr-ino-	<i>belonging to a goose.</i>
erno	nouns	belonging to	hiēm-	<i>winter</i>	hīb-erno-	<i>belonging to winter.</i>
urno	nouns	belonging to	aevō-	<i>age</i>	aevī-urno-	<i>eternal.</i>
urno	nouns	belonging to	noct-	<i>night</i>	noct-urno-	<i>of the night.</i>
ŕro	verbs	state	diū-	<i>day, time</i>	diū-urno-	<i>lasting.</i>
ŕro	prepositions	of two	tāg-	<i>touch</i>	in-tēg-ŕro-	<i>untouched, entire.</i>
tŕro	adj. or prep.	of two	sūb	<i>up</i>	sūp-ŕro-	<i>higher.</i>
oso	nouns	full	quo-	<i>which</i>	ŕt-ŕro-	<i>which of the two.</i>
cōso	nouns	full	āqua-	<i>water</i>	āqu-ōso-	<i>watery.</i>
ento	verbs	full	bello-	<i>war</i>	bellī-cōso-	<i>warlike.</i>
uo	verbs	state	cru of cru-ŕr-	<i>gore</i>	cru-ento-	<i>gory.</i>
ivo	verbs	state	vāc-a-	<i>be empty</i>	vāc-uo-	<i>empty.</i>
tivo	verbs	state	vāc-a-	<i>be empty</i>	vāc-ivo-	<i>empty.</i>
tōr	verbs	male agent	fūg-	<i>fly</i>	fūgī-tivo-	<i>runaway (slave).</i>
			vīc-	<i>conquer</i>	vīc-tōr-	<i>victorious.</i>

In adding the suffixes, the last vowel of the preceding word 227 must not be neglected. Thus, with the suffix *no* or *no*, the following derivatives are formed :

Rōma-, <i>Rome</i> ;	Rōmā-no-, <i>of Rome</i> .
pōmo-, <i>apple, &c.</i> ;	Pōmō-na-, (<i>goddess</i>) <i>of fruit</i> .
māri-, <i>sea</i> ;	māri-no-, <i>of the sea</i> .
tribu-, <i>tribe</i> ;	tribū-no-, (<i>commander</i>) <i>of a tribe, tribune</i> .
ēge- (verb), <i>want</i> ;	ēgē-no-, <i>in want</i> .

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

The simple adjective is said to be in the positive degree : as, 240 *longo-* or *longa-*, *long*.

The comparative degree takes the suffix *iōs* or *iōr* : as, *long-iōs*.* 241 or *long-iōr*-, *longer* or *more long*.*

The superlative degree rarely takes the suffix *ūmo* or *imo*,† *com-* 242 monly *issūmo* or *issīmo* : as, *long-issūmo*-,* *longest* or *most long*.

If the adjective ends in *ēro*, *ēri*, or *ēr*, the superlative suffix is 243 slightly changed : as, *nīgēro*-, *black*, *nīger-rūmo*-, *blackest*.

If the adjective ends in *ili*, the superlative suffix is sometimes 244 slightly changed : as, *fācili*-, *easy*, *fācil-lūmo*-, *easiest*.

The comparatives and superlatives are derived sometimes from 245 kindred words of different forms, sometimes from different words of like meaning. Hence the following irregularities :

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
bōno-, <i>good</i> ,	mēliōs-, <i>better</i> ,	optūmo-, <i>best</i> .
mālo-, <i>bad</i> ,	pējōs- (= <i>ped-ios</i> -), <i>worse</i> ,	pessūmo-, <i>worst</i> .
mag-no-, <i>great</i> ,	mājōs- (= <i>mag-ios</i> -), <i>greater</i> ,	maxūmo-, <i>greatest</i> .
parvo-, <i>little</i> ,	mīnōs-, <i>less</i> ,	mīnūmo-, <i>least</i> .
multo-, <i>much</i> ,	plūs, n. <i>more</i> ,	plūrūmo-, n. <i>most</i> .
multo-† pl. <i>many</i>	plūr-, pl. <i>more</i> ,	plūrūmo-,† pl. <i>most</i> .

See also the table of words derived from prepositions, § 838.

* In adding the suffixes of the comparative and superlative, the vowels *a*, *o*, *i*, at the end of the crude form of the positive are discarded.

† The forms with *ū* are the oldest. They were used by Terence, &c. down to Cicero, inclusive.

‡ These are used in the singular in poetry.

- 246 Sometimes one or more of the positive, comparative, and superlative, are deficient : as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
_____	ōc-iōs-, <i>quicker</i> ,	ōc-issūmo-, <i>quickest</i> .
_____	nēqu-iōs-, <i>worse</i> ,	nēqu-issūmo-, <i>worst</i> .
nōvo-, <i>new</i> ,	_____	nōv-issūmo-, <i>newest</i> .
falso-, <i>false</i> ,	_____	fals-issūmo-, <i>most false</i>
ingenti-, <i>immense</i> ,	ingent-iōs-, <i>more immense</i> .	_____
dēsīd-, <i>slothful</i> ,	dēsīd-iōs-, <i>more slothful</i> .	_____

NUMERALS.

- 247 Cardinal numbers answer to the question, Quōt ? (undeclined) *How many ?* as, *one, two, three, &c.* ; or Tōt (undeclined), *So many*.
- 248 Ordinal numerals state the place occupied in a rank or series. They answer to the question Quōto- or -ta-, N. quōtūs, -tā, -tum ? *Occupying what place in the series ?* Answer : *First, second, third, &c.* ; or Tōto- or -ta-, *Occupying such a place*.
- 249 Distributives answer to the question Quōtēno-, or N. pl. quōtēnī, ae, ā ? *How many at a time ?* *One at a time, two at a time, &c.* Or the preposition *by* may be used : *By twos, by threes, &c.* ; or the word *each* : as, *Two each, three each, &c.*
- 250 The numeral adverbs answer to the question, Quōtiens or quōtiēs ? *How often ?* *Once, twice, thrice, four times, &c.* ; Tōtiens or tōtiēs, *So often*.
- 252 For the lists of Numerals see table, pp. 30, 31.
- 253 *Cardinal numbers.* Those from quattuor to centum, both inclusive, are not declined. Mili- is both substantive and adjective. If no smaller number accompany it, it is more commonly used as a substantive. Hence the phrases millē hōmīnum, millē hōmīnēs ; triā miliā hōmīnum, triā miliā trēcenti hōmīnēs.
- 254 The three first numerals are declined. Uno-, c.f., *one*, makes G. ūnūs, D. ūnī. The other cases are regular.
- 255 Duo-, dua-, c.f., *two*, is declined thus : Plur. N. duō, duae, duō ; Ac. duō or duōs, duās, duō ; G. duōrum, duārum, duōrum or

m. f. n. duum; D. and Ab. duōbūs, duābūs, duōbūs. In the same way is declined ambo-, amba-, c.f., *both*, except that ambo has a long *o*.

Tri-, c.f., *three*, is declined regularly. 256

Mili-, c.f., *thousand*, is declined: Sing. for all cases millē. 257
Pl. N. V. Ac. miliā, G. milium, D. and Ab. milibūs.

From 13 to 19 there occur also dēcem et trēs, &c. Between 258
20 and 100 there are two forms, viz. vīginti ūno- or ūno- et vīginti,
&c. Above 100, the greater number precedes: as, trecentī sexā-
ginta sex, or trecentī et sexāginta sex.

The practice of prefixing the smaller number to the greater in 259
order to denote subtraction, as, IV (one from five), IIX (two
from ten), extended also to the names. Hence duōdēvīginti, 18;
undēvīginti, 19; duōdētrīgintā, 28; undētrīgintā, 29; duōdēquā-
drāgintā, 38; undēquādrāgintā, 39; and so on to duōdēcentum,
98; undēcentum, 99. Series of the same kind belong to the or-
dinals, distributives, and adverbs.

The high numbers were chiefly required for representing money. 260
Here abbreviations were found convenient. Thus millions of *ses-
terces* were commonly denoted by adverbs alone, the words centēnā
milia being omitted: as, dēciens, *ten times (a hundred thousand)*
sesterces, that is, *a million sesterces*; viciens, *twenty times, &c.*, or
two million sesterces.

Ordinal numbers. From 13 to 19 there are also sometimes 261
found dēcūmo- tertio- and dēcūmo- et tertio-, &c. Between 20
and 100 there are two forms, vicensūmo- quarto- or quarto- et
vicensūmo-, &c. For 21, 31, 41, &c., uno- et vicensūmo-, ūna- et
vicensūma-, or ūnetvicensūma-, &c., frequently occur.

Distributive numerals. These are also used as cardinal num- 262
bers with those nouns which with a plural form have a singular
meaning: as, N. bīnae aedēs, *two houses*; bīnae littērae, *two letters*
or *epistles*. Duae aedēs, duae littērae, would signify *two temples*,
two letters of the alphabet. With ūno- there could not be the same
confusion: hence ūnā littērā, unae littērae, signify respectively *one*
letter of the alphabet, *one letter* or *epistle*. The distributives are
often used by the poets for the cardinals.

TABLE OF NUMERALS.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinal. Masc. if declined.	Ordinal. Masc. from —o.	Distributive. Masc. N. pl. from —o.	Adverbs.
1	I.	ũno-	primo-	singũli	sēmēl.
2	II.	duo-	secundo- <i>or</i> altēro-	binī	bīs.
3	III.	tri-	tertio-	ternī <i>or</i> trīnī	tēr.
4	IIII. <i>or</i> IV.	quattuor	quarto-	quāternī	quātēr. [quies, &c.
5	V.	quinquē	quinto-	quīnī	quinquens <i>or</i> quin-
6	VI.	sex	sexto-	sēnī	sexiens.
7	VII.	septem	septimo- <i>or</i> septīmo-	septēnī	septiens.
8	VIII. <i>or</i> IIX.	octō	octāvo-	octōnī	octiens.
9	VIIII. <i>or</i> IX.	nōvem	nōno-	nōvēnī	nōviens.
10	X.	dēcem	dēcūmo-	dēnī	dēcīens.
11	XI.	undēcim	undēcūmo-	undēnī	undēcīens.
12	XII.	duodēcim	duodēcūmo-	duodēnī	duodēcīens.
13	XIII.	tredēcim	tertio- decumo-	ternī denī	terdecīens.
14	XIIII. <i>or</i> XIV.	quattuordēcim	quarto- decumo-	quaternī denī	quaterdecīens.
15	XV.	quindēcim	quinto- decumo-	quīnī denī	quindēcīens.
16	XVI.	sēdecim	sexto- decumo-	senī denī	sedecīens.
17	XVII.	septendēcim	septimo- decumo-	septenī denī	septīens decīens.
18	XVIII. <i>or</i> XIIX.	duodēviginti	duodēvicensumo-	duodevīcenī	duodevīciens.
19	XVIIII. <i>or</i> XIX.	undēviginti	undēvicensumo-	undēvīcenī	undēvīciens.
20	XX.	vinginti <i>or</i> viginti	vicensūmo- <i>or</i> vīcēsūmo-	vīcenī	vīciens.
21	XXI.	vinginti uno-	primo-et-vicensumo-	vīcenī singuli	semel-et-vīciens.
22	XXII.	vinginti duo-	altero-et-vicensumo-	vīcenī binī	bis-et-vīciens.

23 &c.	XXIII. &c.	viginti tri- &c.	vicensumo- tertio- &c.	vieni terni &c.	ter-et-viciens. &c.
30	XXX.	trigintā*	tricensumo-	tricensi	tricens.
40	XXXX. or XL.	quadrāgintā*	quadragensumo-	quadrageni	quadragiens.
50	L.	quinquāgintā	quingagensumo-	quinquageni	quinquagiens.
60	LX.	sexāgintā	sexagensumo-	sexageni	sexagens.
70	LXX.	septuāgintā	septuagensumo-	septuageni	septuagiens.
80	LXXX. or XXC.	octōgintā	octogensumo-	octogeni	octogiens.
90	XC.	nonāgintā	nonagensumo-	nonageni	nonagiens.
100	C.	centum	centensumo-	centeni	centiens.
200	CC.	ducenti, <i>declined</i>	ducentensumo-	ducenti	ducentiens.
300	CCC.	trecenti	trecentensumo-	trecenti	trecentiens.
400	CCCC or CD.	quādringenti	quadringentensumo-	quadringeni	quadringentiens.
500	D. or IO.	quingenti	quingentensumo-	quingeni	quingentiens.
600	DC.	sescenti	sescentensumo-	sescenti	sescentiens.
700	DCC.	septingenti	septingentensumo-	septingeni	septingentiens.
800	DCCC.	octingenti	octingentensumo-	octingeni	octingentiens.
900	DCCCC.	nongenti	nongentensumo-	nongeni	nongentiens.
1,000	M. or CIO.	mili-	millensumo-	singula milia (n.)	milien.
2,000	MM.	duo or bina milia	bis millensumo-	bina milia	bis milien.
5,000	IOO.	quinque or quina milia	quingiens millensumo-	quina milia	quingiens milien.
10,000	CCIOO.	decem or dena milia	decien millensumo-	dena milia	decien milien.

* In late writers trigintā, quadrāgintā, &c.

PRONOUNS.

- 273 Pronouns are, strictly speaking, substantives, adjectives, adverbs, &c., and therefore belong to those heads of grammar; but it is convenient to discuss them separately.

274	FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	
275	C.F. —, <i>I, me.</i>		C.F. —, <i>thou, you.</i>	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
	<i>N.</i> ěgð	nōs	<i>N.</i> tū	vōs
	<i>V.</i> —	—	<i>V.</i> tū	vōs
	<i>Ac.</i> mē	nōs	<i>Ac.</i> tē	vōs
	<i>G.</i> meī	nostrum <i>or</i> -rī	<i>G.</i> tuī	vostrum <i>or</i> -rī.
	<i>D.</i> mīhī <i>or</i> mī	nōbīs	<i>D.</i> tībī	vōbīs
	<i>Ab.</i> mē	nōbīs	<i>Ab.</i> tē	vōbīs

- 276 For the pronoun of the third person, viz. *he, she, it*, the several parts of the adjective *i-* or *eo-* are used (see § 302).
- 277 The nominatives of these pronouns are not expressed unless emphatic, because the personal suffixes of the verbs already denote the persons.
- 278 *Reflective* pronouns refer to the person or thing expressed in the nominative case. In English the word *self* is used for this purpose.
- 279 Reflective pronouns from their very nature can have no nominative or vocative.
- 280 In the first and second persons the common personal pronouns are used, viz. *me, mei, &c., te, tui, &c.* For the third person the following are used, without any distinction for number or gender, to signify *himself, herself, itself, themselves*:

Ac. sē; G. suī; D. sībī; Ab. sē.

- 281 Ac. Mē, tē, sē, are also doubled, as mēmē, tētē, sēsē. The two first are rare, and only used to give emphasis. Sēsē is not uncommon: it is used when no emphasis is intended, if it refer to a plural nominative.
- 283 D. Mī is rarely used in prose writers.
- 283* G. pl. For *vostrum* and *vostrī* we also find *vestrum* and *vestrī*.
- 286 The three *demonstrative* pronouns are adjectives, which point as it were with the finger to the place occupied: as, *ho-, this near me; isto-, that near you; illo-, that yonder.*

Illo- (older form *ōlo-* or *ollo-*), *that yonder*.

287

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	illē	illā	illū	<i>N.</i>	illī	illae	illā
<i>Ac.</i>	illum	illam	illū	<i>Ac.</i>	illōs	illās	illā
<i>G.</i>	illiūs	illiūs	illiūs	<i>G.</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>D.</i>	illī	illī	illī	<i>D.</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Ab.</i>	illō	illā	illō	<i>Ab.</i>	illīs	illīs	illīs

In the same manner is declined *isto-*, *that near you*.

288

To the three demonstratives, and to the adverbs derived from them, the demonstrative enclitic *cē* or *c* is often added for the sake of greater emphasis.

Illo-, with enclitic *cē*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> illic	illaec	illoc or illuc	<i>N.</i> illicē	illaec	illaec
<i>Ac.</i> illunc	illanc	illoc or illuc	<i>Ac.</i> illoscē	illascē	illaec
<i>G.</i> illiuscē	illiuscē	illiuscē	<i>G.</i> illōrunc	illārunc	illōrunc
<i>D.*</i> illic	illicē	illicē	<i>D.</i> illiscē	illiscē	illiscē
<i>Ab.</i> illōc	illāc	illōc	<i>Ab.</i> illiscē	illiscē	illiscē

Ho-, *this* (partly with, partly without the suffix *cē*).

295

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	hīc†	haec	hōc†	<i>N.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Ac.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc†	<i>Ac.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>G.</i>	hūjūs	hūjūs	hūjūs	<i>G.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>D.‡</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>D.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Ab.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>Ab.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

Those cases which do not end in *c*, as here declined, may have that enclitic added: as, G. *hujusce*; N. pl. m. *hice*, f. *haece* or *haec*; Ac. *hosce*, &c.

The adverbs from *illo-* (or *ōlo-*) are, *illō* or *illōc* or *illūc*, *to yonder place, thither*; *illim* or *illinc*, *from yonder place*; *illī* or *illīc*, *in yonder place, yonder, there*; *illā* or *illāc*, *by yonder road, along that line*.

The adverbs derived from *isto-* are, *istō* or *istōc* or *istūc*, *to the place where you are*; *istim* or *istinc*, *from the place where you are*;

* The dative *illic* is only used as an adverb.† *Hic* nom., and *hoc* nom. or acc., are nearly always long.‡ *Hic* is the form of the dative when used as an adverb.

istī or istic, *where you are*; istā or istāc, *along the place where you are*.

- 300 The adverbs from *ho-* are, hōc or hūc, *hither, towards me*; hinc, *hence, from me, from this time*; hic, *here, near me*; hāc, *along this road, by me*; and sic (which also contains the enclitic cē), *thus, in this way*.

- 301 *Logical* pronouns refer only to the *words* of a sentence. To these belong *i-* or *eo-*, *this or that*; and *qui-* or *quo-*, *which, &c.*

- 302 I- or eo-, *this or that*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. is	eā	īd	N. hī, iī, or ī	eae	eā
Ac. eum	eam	īd	Ac. eōs	eās	eā
G. ējūs	ējūs	ējūs	G. eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	D. hīs, eīs, or iīs, for all genders		
Ab. eō	eā	eō	Ab. hīs, eīs, or iīs, for all genders.		

- 304 The adverbs from *i-* or *eo-* are, eō, *to this or to that place or degree, thither*; indē (in compounds *im* or *in*, as *exim* or *exin*), *from this**—, *from that* —, *thence*; ībi, *in or at this* —, *in that* —, *there, then*; eā, *along this or that line or road*; Itā, *thus, so*; jam, *now, already, at last*.

- 305 Qui- or quo-, *which, what, who, any*.

Singular.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. quīs or quī	quae or quā	quīd or quōd
Ac. quem	quam	quīd or quōd
G. quōjūs or cūjūs, for all genders		
D. quoi or cui,† for all genders		
Ab. quō or quī	quā or quī	quō or quī
Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. quī	quae	quae or quā
Ac. quōs	quās	quae or quā
G. quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. Ab. quībūs or quīs, for all genders		

- 306 Of the double forms, *quī* N. and *quōd* are adjectives; *quīs*, both adj. and subs.; *quīd*, a subs. only.

* For the blanks insert *time, place, &c.* as it may be. † Rarely cūī.

Qui- or quo- is called a *relative* when it refers to a preceding 307 word, as, *the person who* —, *the thing which* —, *the knife with which* —, &c. To the relative belong, N. qui, quae, quod; Ac. quem, quam, quod, &c.; and in the neut. pl. N. Ac. only quae.

It is called a *direct interrogative* when it asks a question, as, 308 *who did it?* and an *indirect interrogative* when it only speaks of a question, as, *we do not know who did it.* To the interrogative belong all the forms, except quā in the N. f. and neut. pl.

It is said to be used *indefinitely* when it signifies *any*. In this 309 case it is placed after some word to which it belongs; very commonly after si, nē, num, ec, āli. All the forms are used in this sense, but quā is more common than quae.

The adverbs from quo- or qui- are, quō, *whither, to what* —; 315 undē (formerly cunde), *from what* —, *whence*; ūbī (formerly cubi), *in what* —, *where, when*; quā, *along what road or line, &c.*

The conjunctions from quo- or qui- are, quom, quum, or 316 cum, *when*; quandō, *when*; quam, *how*; quārē (qua re), quūr or cūr, *why*; ūt (formerly cut) or ūtī, *how, that, as*; quōd, *that, because, &c.*

The following adjectives are derived from quo- or qui-: quan- 317 to-, *how great*; quāli-, *like what, of what kind*; quōt (undecdeclined), *how many* (whence quōtiens, *how often*); quōto-, *occupying what place in a series.*

From an old root, to-, *this*, are derived the adjectives, tanto-, 318 *so great*; tāli-, *like this, of this kind*; tōt (undecdeclined), *so many* (whence tōtiens, *so often*); tōto-, *occupying this place*; also the adverbs tam, *so*; tum or (with the enclitic cē) tunc, *then*.

Ali- is prefixed to many of the relative forms: as, āliqui-, *any*, 320 *some* (emphatic), declined like qui-, *any*; N. n. āliquantum, *some, a considerable quantity*; āliquōt (undecdeclined), *some, a considerable number, &c.*

Utēro- (originally cu-tero-) generally an interrogative, *which* 324 *of the two?* and sometimes a relative, *he of the two, who*; and after si, *either*, as, si ūtēr, *if either*, has G. ūtrīūs, D. ūtrī. Hence neutēro-, N. neutēr, &c. (formerly ne-cūtēr), *neither*.

Ipsō-, ipsa-, *self, very*, is declined: N. ipsē, ipsā, ipsum; Ac. 325 ipsum, ipsam, ipsum; and the rest like illo-.

Alio-, *another*, has G. āliūs, D. āliī, N. and Ac. n. sing. āliūd. 327

Altēro- (from āli-), *another of two, the second*, has G. altērīūs, D. 330 altērī; but altērīūs occurs in poetry.

- 334 Ullo-, *any* (a diminutive from ūno-, *one*), has G. ulliŭs, D. ulli. It is accompanied by a substantive, and is used only in negative sentences. Hence nullo-, *none*.
- 342 Many enclitics are added to the pronouns to give emphasis to them : as, Dem, with the pronoun i- or eo- : as, i-dem, *the same*. N. i-dem, eā-dem, i-dem ; Ac. eun-dem, ean-dem, i-dem, &c.
- 343 Dam, with quo- or qui-. N. qui-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam or quod-dam ; Ac. quen-dam, quan-dam, quid-dam or quod-dam, &c., *a certain* —.
- 344 Quam, with quo- or qui- : as, N. quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, &c., *any*, in negative sentences. It is commonly used without a substantive. (See ullo- above.) From quisquam are formed the adverbs umquam or unquam (originally cumquam), *ever* : from whence nunquam, *never* ; nēquīquam, *in vain* ; haudquāquam, *in no way, by no means* ; neutīquam or nūtīquam, *in no way, by no means* ; usquam, *any where* ; nusquam, *no where*.
- 346 Nam : as, N. quisnam or quīnam, quāenam, quidnam or quodnam, &c., *who, which ?* in interrogations (emphatic) ; and N. ūternam, *which of the two ?* in interrogations (emphatic).
- 347 Quē : as, N. quisquē, quaequē, quidquē or quodquē, &c., *every, each* : whence the adverbs ūbīquē, *every where* ; undīquē, *from every side* ; ūtīquē, *any how* ; usquē, *every step, every moment* ; also N. ūterquē, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē, *each of two, both*.
- 350 Cumquē or cunquē : as, N. quīcunquē, quaecunquē, quodcunquē, &c., *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever* ; and N. ūtercunquē, ūtrācunquē, ūtrumcunquē, &c., *whichever of the two* ; N. quantuscunquē, &c., *how great soever* ; quandōcunquē, *whensoever*, &c.
- 351 Vis (*thou wishest*, from vōl-, *wish*) : as, N. quīvis, quāvis, quidvis or quodvis, &c., *any one you please* (the best or the worst), a universal affirmative : whence quamvis, *as much as you please, no matter how* —, *though ever so* — ; and ūtervis, ūtrāvis, ūtrumvis, *whichever of the two you please*.
- 352 Lūbēt or lībēt (*it pleaseth*) : as, N. quīlūbēt, &c., *any one you please* ; and N. ūterlūbēt, &c., *whichever of the two you please*.
- 353 Relative forms are often doubled. Thus, qui- doubled : as, N. quisquīs, (quaequae ?), quidquīd or quicquīd, &c., *whoever, no matter who*. Quanto- doubled : as, N. quantusquantūs, &c., *how great soever, no matter how great*. Quāli- doubled : as, N. quālisquālis, &c., *whatever-like, no matter what-like*. Quōt doubled : as, quotquōt (undeclined), *how many soever, no matter how many*.

So also there are the doubled adverbs or conjunctions : *quam*, *however, no matter how, although, and yet* ; *ūtūt*, *however, no matter how* ; *quōquō*, *whithersoever* ; *undēundē*, *whencesoever* ; *ūbiūbi*, *wheresoever* ; *quāquā*, *along whatsoever road*.

The *possessive* pronouns are :

359

Meo-, *mea-*, *mine, my*.

Tuo-, *tua-*, *thine, thy, your, yours* (of one person).

Suo-, *sua-*, *his, her, hers, its* ; *their, theirs*.

Nostēro-, *—a-*, *our, ours*.

Vostēro- or *vestēro-*, *—a-*, *your, yours* (of more than one).

Suo- is a reflexive pronoun, and can only be used when it refers to the nominative. In other cases, *his, her, or its*, must be translated by the genitive *ejus* from *i-* or *eo-* ; and *their* by the genitive *eōrum* or *eārum*.

TABLE OF PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

366

Ending in	bī or ī	ō	n, m, or ndē	a
Meaning	<i>where</i>	<i>whither</i>	<i>whence</i>	<i>along what road</i>
ho-	hīc	[hō*,] hōc†, hūc	hinc	hāc
isto-	istī, istīc	istō, istōc†, istūc	istim, istinc	istā, istāc
illo-	illī, illīc	illō, illōc†, illūc	illim, illinc	illā, illāc
i- or eo-	ībī	eō	indē	eā
i- or eo- + dem	ībidem	eōdem	indīdem	eādem
qui- or quo-	ūbī	quō	undē	quā
ūtēro-	ūtērbī	ūtēro	ūtērindē	ūtērā
ālio-	ālīūbī	ālīō	ālīundē	ālīā
ālī-	ālībī			
ālī + qui- or quo-	ālīcūbī	ālīquō	ālīcundē	ālīquā
qui- doubled	ūbiūbī	quōquō	undeundē	quāquā
qui- or quo- + vīs	ūbīvīs	quōvīs	undēvīs	quāvīs
qui- &c. + lūbēt	ūbīlūbēt	quōlūbēt	undēlūbēt	quālūbēt
qui- &c. + quē	ūbīquē	quōquē	undīquē	
utero- + quē	ūtērbīquē	ūtēroquē	ūtērinquē	ūtērāquē
qui- &c. + quam		quōquam		quāquam†
qui- &c. + nam	ubinam	quōnam		quānam

* Occurring in *horsum* for *ho-vorsum*, *hitherwards*.

† The forms in *ōc* are rare.

‡ In *nequaquam* and *haudquaquam*, *in no way, by no means*.

VERBS.

- 367 An *active* verb denotes action, *i. e.* movement : as, *caed-*, *fell*, *cut*, or *strike* ; *cur-*, *run*.
- 368 The person (or thing) from whom the action proceeds is called the *nominative to the verb*.
- 369 The object to which the action is directed is called the *accusative after the verb*.
- 370 A verb which admits a nominative is called *personal* : as, *vir caedit*, *the man strikes*.
- 371 A verb which does not admit a nominative is called *impersonal* : as, *tōna-*, *thunder* ; *tōnāt*, *it thunders*.
- 372 A *transitive* verb is one which admits an object or accusative after it : as, *caedit puerum*, *he strikes the boy*.
- 373 An *intransitive* verb is one which does not admit an accusative : as, *currit*, *he runs*.
- 374 The object of a transitive verb may be the agent himself : as, *caedo me*, *I strike myself* ; *caedis te*, *you strike yourself* ; *caedit se*, *he strikes himself*, &c. A verb is then said to be used as a *reflective*.
- 375 In Latin a reflective suffix is added to a transitive verb, so as to give it the reflective sense : as, *verto*, *I turn*, *vertor*, *I turn myself* ; *vertis*, *you turn*, *vertēris*, *you turn yourself* ; *vertit*, *he turns*, *vertitūr*, *he turns himself*.
- 376 A reflective verb then denotes an action upon oneself, and in Latin is conjugated in the imperfect tenses with a suffix *s* or *r*. It will be denoted by an *r* between brackets : as, *vert-* (*r.*), *turn oneself*.
- 377 The perfect tenses of a reflective verb are supplied by the verbs *ēs-* and *fu-*, *be*, united with the participle in *to-*.
- 378 An intransitive verb is generally in meaning reflective : as, *cur-*, *run*, *i. e.* *put oneself in a certain rapid motion* ; *ambūla-*, *walk*, *i. e.* *put oneself in a certain moderate motion* : but as the object in these cases cannot be mistaken, no reflective pronoun or suffix is added.
- 379 When the source of an action (*i. e.* the nominative) is not known, or it is thought not desirable to mention it, it is common to say that the action proceeds from the object itself. A reflective so used is called a *passive* : thus *vertitūr*, literally *he turns himself*, is often used for *he is turned*.
- 380 This passive use of a verb with a reflective suffix is much more common than the proper reflective use.

The nominative to the passive verb is the same as the accusative after the transitive verb: *caedunt puërum, they strike the boy; or caedîtûr puër, the boy is struck.*

Hence passive verbs can be formed only from transitives. 382

A passive impersonal verb, however, is formed from intransitives: as, from *nöce-, do damage, nöcētûr, damage is done; from resist-, stand in opposition, offer resistance, rësistîtûr, resistance is offered, &c.* At times it is necessary to use the word *they* or *people* with the active: as, from *i-, go; Itur, they go or people go.*

Transitive verbs also may form a passive impersonal: as, from *dic-, say, dicîtûr, it is said or they say.*

A static verb denotes a state: as, *ës-, be; dormi-, sleep; vîgîla-, be awake; jâce-, lie; mëtu-, fear.*

Static verbs generally end in *e*, by which they are distinguished from active verbs of nearly the same form and meaning: as,

jăc- or jăci-	throw;	jăce-	lie.
pend-	hang or suspend;	pende-	hang or be suspended
sîd-	alight or sink;	sêde-	sit.
sêda-	cause to sink back, calm;		
căp- or căpi-	take;	hăbe-	hold or have.
possîd-	enter upon possession;	possîde-	possess.
ferv-	boil;	ferve-	be boiling hot.
cand-	set on fire;	cande-	blaze, cale-
alba-	whiten;	albe-	be white.

A static imperfect is nearly equivalent to the perfect of an active; as, *possêdit, he has taken possession, and possîdet, he possesses or is in possession; possêderat, he had taken possession, and possîdebat, he possessed or was in possession; possêderît, he will have taken possession, and possîdebît, he will possess or be in possession.*

Hence many static verbs in *e* have no perfect; and even in those which appear to have one, the perfect, by its meaning, seems to belong to an active verb. Thus, *frige-, be cold*, is said to have a perfect, *frixi*. The compound *refrîxi* does exist, but not with a static meaning. Thus, *vînum refrîxit, the wine got or has got cold again*. The form of the perfect itself implies a present *refrig-*, not *refrige-*.

Hence two perfects from active verbs are translated as static imperfects: as, *gno- or gno-sc- or nosc-, examine; perf. nôv-, whence nôvit, he has examined or he knows, nôvêrat, he had exa-*

mined or *he knew*; *consuo-* or *consuesc-*, *acquire a habit* or *accustom oneself*, perf. *consuēvit*, *he has acquired the habit* or *is accustomed*, *consuēverat*, *he had acquired the habit* or *was accustomed*.

390 Two verbs have only the perfect in use, and these translated by English imperfects of static meaning, viz. *ōd-*,* *mēmīn-*: whence *ōdit*, *he hates*, *ōdērāt*, *he hated*, *ōdērīt*, *he will hate*; *mēmīnit*, *he remembers*, *mēmīnērāt*, *he remembered*, *mēmīnērīt*, *he will remember*.

391 Static verbs are for the most part intransitive; but some are transitive, as those which denote possession, *hābe-*, *hold*; *tēne-*, *keep*; *posīde-*, *possess*; *sci-*, *know*; and verbs of feeling, as, *āma-*, *love*; *time-*, *fear*.

IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AND MEANING.

392 A static intransitive has sometimes a reflective or passive perfect. Such a verb is commonly called a *Neuter-Passive*: as,

<i>Lat.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Pres. 3 pers.</i>	<i>Perf. 3 pers. m.</i>
<i>aude-</i>	<i>dare</i> ,	<i>audet</i> ,	<i>ausūs est.</i>
<i>gaude-</i>	<i>rejoice</i> ,	<i>gaudet</i> ,	<i>gāvīsūs est.</i>
<i>fīd-</i>	<i>trust</i> ,	<i>fīdīt</i> ,	<i>fīsūs est.</i>
<i>sōle-</i>	<i>be wont</i> ,	<i>sōlet</i> ,	<i>sōlītūs est.</i>

393 To the same class belong several impersonal verbs of feeling, &c.; viz.

<i>mīsēre-</i>	denoting <i>pity</i> ,	<i>mīsēret</i> ,	<i>mīsērītum</i> or <i>mīsertum est.</i>
<i>pūde-</i>	„ <i>shame</i> ,	<i>pūdet</i> ,	<i>pūduit</i> or <i>pūdītum est.</i>
<i>pīge-</i>	„ <i>reluctance</i> ,	<i>pīget</i> ,	<i>pīguit</i> or <i>pīgītum est.</i>
<i>taede-</i>	„ <i>weariness</i> ,	<i>taedet</i> ,	<i>taedit</i> or <i>per-taesum est.</i>
<i>lūbe-</i>	„ <i>pleasure</i> ,	<i>lūbet</i> ,	<i>lūbuit</i> or <i>lūbītum est.</i>
<i>plāce-</i>	„ <i>approbation</i> ,	<i>plācet</i> ,	<i>plācuit</i> or <i>plācītum est.</i>
<i>lice-</i>	„ <i>permission</i> ,	<i>licet</i> ,	<i>licuit</i> or <i>licītum est.</i>

399 Many reflective verbs are translated by an English intransitive: as, *profic-isc-* (r.), *set out*; *laeta-* (r.), *rejoice*; which have still a reflective sense. These are called *Intransitive Deponents*.

400 Many reflective verbs have so completely thrown off the reflective meaning, that they are translated by an English transitive and take a new accusative: as, *mīra-* (r.), *admire*; *vēre-* (r.), *fear*; *amplect-* (r.), *embrace*; *indu-* (r.), *clothe oneself*, *put on*; *sēqu-* (r.),

* The imperfects seem to have been *ōdi-* or *ōd-*, ‘take offence,’ whence *ōsūs*, ‘hating;’ and *mēn-*, ‘mind’ or ‘observe attentively.’

follow ; *īmīta-* (r.), *make oneself like, imitate*. These are called *Transitive Deponents*.

The verb, then, has two forms or *voices* ; the *simple voice* 405 (commonly called the *active*), which does not take the reflective suffix ; the *reflective voice* (commonly called the *passive*), which does take it.

PERSONAL SUFFIXES, MOODS, TENSES, &c.

In English the pronouns *I, you or thou, he, she, it, &c.* are 406 prefixed to a verb. In Latin little syllables with the same meaning are attached to the end of a verb, so as to form one word with it : as, *scrib-, write* : *scrib-o, I write* ; *scrib-is, you write* ; *scrib-it, he writes* ; *scrib-imus, we write* ; *scrib-itis, you write* ; *scrib-unt, they write*.

The *indicative* mood is used for the main verb of a sentence, 423 whether it be affirmative, negative, or interrogative. It is also used in some secondary sentences.

The *imperative* mood *commands*. 424

The *subjunctive* mood, as its name implies, is used in secondary 427 sentences subjoined to the main verb.

The *infinitive* mood is also used in secondary sentences sub- 430 joined to the main verb. It differs from the subjunctive in that it does not admit the personal suffixes to be added to it.

The *supines* are the accusative and ablative cases of a masculine 433 substantive formed from a verb with the suffix *itū* or *ivū*. The accusative supine has occasionally the construction of a verb with the noun following.

The *gerund* is a neuter substantive formed from a verb with the 435 suffix *endo-*.

A *participle* is an adjective in form, but differs from adjectives ; 436 first, because an adjective speaks of a quality generally, while a participle speaks of an act or state at a particular time ; secondly, because a participle has the construction of a verb with the noun following.

Tense is another word for time. There are three tenses ; *past*, 437 *present*, and *future*.

The past and future are boundless ; the present is but a point 438 of time.

As an act may be either past, present, or future, with respect 439 to the present moment, so *yesterday* had its past, present, and

future ; and *to-morrow* again will have its past, present, and future.

Thus, first in reference to the present moment, we have : Past, *he has written to A* ; Pres. *he is writing to B* ; Fut. *he is going to write to C*.

Secondly, in reference to yesterday or any other moment now gone by : Past, *he had written to D* ; Pres. *he was writing to E* ; Fut. *he was going to write to F*.

Thirdly, in reference to to-morrow or any moment not yet arrived : Past, *he will have written to G* ; Pres. *he will be writing to H* ; Fut. *he will be going to write to I*.

440 Or the same ideas may be arranged as follows :

Action finished, or *perfect* : at a past time, *he had written to D* ; at the present moment, *he has written to A* ; at a future time, *he will have written to G*.

Action going on, or *imperfect* : at a past time, *he was writing to E* ; at the present moment, *he is writing to B* ; at a future time, *he will be writing to H*.

Action intended : at a past time, *he was going to write to F* ; at the present moment, *he is going to write to C* ; at a future time, *he will be going to write to I*.

442 The word 'perfect' means *relatively* past : thus, the present perfect is past, the past perfect was past, the future perfect will be past.

443 Again, the perfect tenses are used for events *recently* past, the consequences still remaining. *I have passed a good night, and feel refreshed ; he had had his breakfast, and was putting on his boots ; you will then have finished your letter, and will be ready to walk with me*. But we cannot say, *William the Conqueror has died in Normandy*.

445 The aorist, *he wrote*, is not thus limited ; it may be applied to any past time : as, *Cicero wrote a history of his consulship*. It does not, like the past tenses which we have been considering, stand in any relation to any other point of time. The consequences of the act are not alluded to, as in the perfects ; nor the duration of the act spoken of, as in the imperfects. On the contrary, the aorist treats the act as a mere *point* of past time.

447 The simple future, *he will write*, corresponds in general character to the aorist of past time. It is equally independent of other points of future time, and speaks of the act as momentary.

The Latin indicative has six leading tenses: three perfect tenses, 451 and three which, for convenience, but somewhat inaccurately,* are called imperfects; viz. the present, the past-imperfect, the future; the present-perfect, the past-perfect, the future-perfect. .

The c.f. of a verb is often strengthened for the imperfect 451* tenses: (a.) by lengthening the vowel: thus, *dic-*, *say*, *dūc-*, *lead*, *fid-*, *trust*, become in the imperfect tenses *dīc-*, *dūc-*, *fid-*. (b.) by doubling the final consonant: thus, *mīt-*, *let go*, *cūr-*, *run*, *vēr-*, *sweep*, become *mitt-*, *curr-*, *verr-*. (c.) by substituting two consonants for the final consonant: thus, *rūp-*, *burst*, *scīd-*, *tear*, *tēn-*, *stretch*, become *rump-*, *scind-*, *tend-*.

When an affirmation is made with emphasis, also in negative 453 and interrogative phrases, the verb *do* is commonly used in the translation: as, *he does write*; *he does not write*; *does he write*?

A crude form of the *perfect* is formed from the simple verb in 471 three different ways:

a. By *reduplication*, that is, by prefixing to the verb a syllable more or less like the verb itself: as, *morde-*, *bite*, *mōmord-* or *mēmord-*, *bit*; *tend-*, *stretch*, *tētend-*, *stretched*.

b. By a *long vowel*: as, *fāc-* or *fāci-*, *make*, *fēc-*, *made*; *vēn-* or *vēni-*, *come*, *vēn-*, *came*.

c. By *s* suffixed: as, *scrib-*, *write*, *scrips-*, *wrote*; *dic-*, *say*, *dix-*, *said*.

d. But many verbs, including nearly all those which end in a vowel, abstain from all these three changes.

All verbs in the perfect tenses take a suffix *vis* (*uis*) or *is*, which 472 readily changes to *ver* or *er*. The verbs which end in a vowel and those which abstain from the changes mentioned in the last section generally take the fuller suffix *vis*, the others *is*. This suffix *vis* or *is* is most clearly seen in the second persons of the present-perfect, as:

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. <i>tend-</i> , <i>stretch</i> ; | <i>tētend-is-ti</i> , <i>thou hast stretched</i> . |
| <i>morde-</i> , <i>bite</i> ; | <i>mōmord-is-ti</i> , <i>thou hast bitten</i> . |
| b. <i>fāc-</i> or <i>fāci-</i> , <i>make</i> ; | <i>fēc-is-ti</i> , <i>thou hast made</i> . |
| <i>vēn-</i> or <i>vēni-</i> , <i>come</i> ; | <i>vēn-is-ti</i> , <i>thou hast come</i> . |
| c. <i>scrib-</i> , <i>write</i> ; | <i>scrips-is-ti</i> , <i>thou hast written</i> . |
| <i>dīc-</i> , <i>say</i> ; | <i>dix-is-ti</i> , <i>thou hast said</i> . |

* Inaccurately, because the Latin future of an active verb is never an imperfect future. Thus *scribet* means 'he will write,' not 'he will be writing.'

d. āra-, <i>plough</i> ;	ārā-vis-ti, <i>thou hast ploughed.</i>
dōc-e-, <i>teach</i> ;	dōc-uis-ti, <i>thou hast taught.</i>
audi-, <i>hear</i> ;	audi-vis-ti, <i>thou hast heard.</i>
cōl-, <i>till</i> ;	cōl-uis-ti, <i>thou hast tilled.</i>
gēm-, <i>groan</i> ;	gēm-uis-ti, <i>thou hast groaned.</i>

473 The present-perfect tense of the Latin is also used for an aorist: as, scripsit, *he has written* or *he wrote.*

479 The *imperative* mood has two tenses, a present and a future.

481 The *subjunctive* mood has four tenses: the present, the past, the present-perfect, and the past-perfect. Of these, the two former are often called the imperfect tenses.

484 The perfect tenses of the subjunctive, like those of the indicative, are derived from the crude form of the perfect.

518 As the changes which take place in adding the suffixes to a verb depend in a great measure upon the last letter, verbs may be divided into the following classes or *conjugations*, viz.:

The consonant (or third) conjugation, as scrib-, *write*; whence the infinitive scribēre, and the second person present indicative scribīs.

The *a* (or first) conjugation, as āra-, *plough*; whence the infinitive ārārē, and the 2 p. pres. ind. ārās.

The *e* (or second) conjugation, as dōc-e-, *teach*; whence the infinitive dōcēre, and the 2 p. pres. ind. dōcēs.

The *u* (or third) conjugation, as ācu-, *sharpen*; whence the infinitive ācuēre, and the 2 p. pres. ind. ācuīs.

The *i* (or fourth) conjugation, as audi-, *hear*; whence the infinitive audire, and the 2 p. pres. ind. audīs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF A VERB.

531 When the infinitive, the indicative present, the perfect, and the supine or verbal in *tu* of a Latin verb are known, there is seldom any difficulty in conjugating it. They are therefore called the *principal parts* of the verb.

532 In the following lists the *first person* of the present and perfect are given, the *accusative* of the supine, or for reflective verbs the *nominative* of the participle. In most of the compounds the infinitive has been omitted for the sake of brevity.

THIRD OR CONSONANT CONJUGATION.

533

LIP-LETTERS, B, P.

bŭb- <i>drink</i>	bŭbĕre	bŭbo	bŭbi	
scrib- <i>write</i>	scribĕre	scribo	scripsi	scriptum
cŭb- <i>lie down</i>	[cumbere	cumbo]	cŭbui	cubĭtum
nŭb- <i>veil</i>	nŭbĕre	nŭbo	nupsi	nuptum
căp- or căpi- <i>take</i>	căpĕre	căpio	căpi	captum
răp- or răpi- <i>seize</i>	răpĕre	răpio	răpui	raptum
săp- or săpi- <i>taste</i>	săpĕre	săpio	săpivi or săpii	
rĕp- <i>creep</i>	rĕpĕre	rĕpo	repsi	reptum
strĕp- <i>resound</i>	strĕpĕre	strĕpo	strĕpui	strĕpĭtum
scalp- <i>scratch</i>	scalpĕre	scalpo	scalpsi	scalptum
carp- <i>nibble, pluck</i>	carpĕre	carpo	carpsi	carptum
serp- <i>creep</i>	serpĕre	serpo	serpsi	serptum
cŭp or cŭpi- <i>desire eagerly</i>	cŭpĕre	cŭpio	cŭpivi	cŭpĭtum
rŭp- <i>burst</i>	rumpĕre	rumpo	rŭpi	ruptum

THROAT-LETTERS, C, G, H, Q, X.

534

făc- or făci- <i>make, do</i>	făcĕre	făcio	făci	factum
jăc- or jăci- <i>throw</i>	jăcĕre	jăcio	jăci	jactum
pĕc- <i>comb</i>	pectĕre	pecto	pexi	pexum
fĕc- <i>bend</i>	flectĕre	flecto	flexi	flexum
plĕc- <i>plait</i>	plectĕre	plecto	plexi	plexum
nĕc- <i>link, join</i>	nectĕre	necto	nexui or nexi	nexum
dĭc- <i>say</i>	dicĕre	dico	dixi	dictum
vĭc- <i>conquer</i>	vincĕre	vinco	vici	victum
parc- <i>spare</i>	parcĕre	parco	pĕperci	parsum
posc- <i>demand</i>	poscĕre	posco	pŏposci	
dŭc- <i>draw, lead</i>	dŭcĕre	dŭco	duxi	ductum
ăg- <i>drive</i>	ăgĕre	ăgo	ăgi	actum
plăg- <i>strike</i>	plangĕre	plango	planxi	planctum
păg- <i>fix</i>	pangĕre	pango	pĕpĭgi	pactum
frăg- <i>break</i>	frangĕre	frango	frĕgi	fractum
tăg- <i>touch</i>	tangĕre	tango	tătĭgi	tactum
lĕg- <i>sweep, read</i>	lĕgĕre	lĕgo	lĕgi	lectum
rĕg- <i>make straight</i>	rĕgĕre	rĕgo	rexī	rectum
tĕg- <i>thatch, cover</i>	tĕgĕre	tĕgo	texi	tectum
fĭg- <i>fix</i>	fĭgĕre	fĭgo	fixi	fixum
fĭg- <i>mould, invent</i>	fingĕre	fingo	finxi	fictum

pīg- <i>paint</i>	pingĕre	pingo	pinxi	pictum
strīg- <i>grasp, graze</i>	stringĕre	stringo	strinxi	strictum
tīg- <i>dye</i>	tingĕre*	tingo	tinxi	tinctum
fulg- <i>flash</i>	fulgĕre	fulgo	fulsi	
ang- <i>strangle</i>	angĕre	ango	anxi	
cing- <i>gird</i>	cingĕre	cingo	cinxi	cinctum
ung- <i>grease</i>	ungĕre*	ungo	unxi	unctum
sparg- <i>scatter</i>	spargĕre	spargo	sparsi	sparsum
merg- <i>sink</i>	mergĕre	mergo	mersi	mersum
terg- <i>wipe</i>	tergĕre	tergo	tersi	tersum
fūg- or fūgi- <i>flee, fly</i>	fūgĕre	fūgio	fūgi	fūgitum
jūg- <i>yoke, join</i>	jungĕre	jungo	junxi	junctum
pūg- <i>puncture</i>	pungĕre	pungo	pūpūgi	punctum
sūg- <i>suck</i>	sūgĕre	sūgo	suxi	suctum
trāh- <i>drag</i>	trāhĕre	trāho	traxi	tractum
vĕh- <i>carry</i>	vĕhĕre	vĕho	vexi	vectum
līq- <i>leave</i>	linquĕre	linquo	liqui	
cōq- <i>cook</i>	cōquĕre	cōquo	coxi	coctum
tex- <i>weave</i>	texĕre	texo	texui	textum
vīv- or vīg- <i>live</i>	vīvēre	vīvo	vixi	victum
flu- or fluc- <i>flow</i>	fluĕre	fluo	fluxi	fluxum
stru- or struc- <i>pile, build</i>	struĕre	struo	struxi	structum

540

TEETH-LETTERS, D, T.

cād- <i>fall</i>	cādĕre	cādo	cēcīdi	cāsum
rād- <i>scrape</i>	rādĕre	rādo	rāsi	rāsum
vād- <i>go</i>	vādĕre	vādo		
ēd- or ēs- <i>eat</i>	ēdĕre or esse	ēdo	ēdi	ēsum
caed- <i>fell, strike, cut</i>	caedĕre	caedo	cēcīdi	caesum
laed- <i>strike, hurt</i>	laedĕre	laedo	laesi	laesum
cēd- <i>go quietly, yield</i>	cēdĕre	cēdo	cessi	cessum
sēd- <i>sit down</i>	sīdĕre	sīdo	sēdi or sīdi	sessum
scīd- <i>tear, cut</i>	scīdĕre	scīdo	[scīcīdi or]	scīdi scissum
fīd- <i>cleave</i>	fīdĕre	fīdo	[fīfīdi or]	fīdi fissum
strīd- <i>hiss, screech</i>	strīdĕrĕ	strīdo	strīdi	
scand- <i>climb</i>	scandĕre	scando	scandi	scansum
mand- <i>chew</i>	mandĕre	mando	mandi	mansum
pand- <i>spread</i>	pandĕre	pando	pandi	pansum or passum
pend- <i>hang, weigh</i>	pendĕre	pendo	pēpendi	pensum

* Also *tinguĕre, tinguo*; *unguĕre, unguo*.

tend- or tēn- <i>stretch</i>	tendĕre	tendo	tētendi	tentum or tensum
fōd- or fōdi- <i>dig</i>	fōdĕre	fōdio	fōdi	fossūm
rōd- <i>gnaw</i>	rōdĕre	rōdo	rōsi	rōsum
clūd- <i>shut</i>	claudĕre	claudio	clausi	clausūm
plaud- <i>clap</i>	plaudĕre	plaudio	plausi	plausūm
cuđ- <i>hammer, coin</i>	cudĕre	cūdo	cūdi	cūsum
fūd- <i>pour</i>	fundĕre	fundo	fūdi	fūsum
lūd- <i>play</i>	lūdĕre	lūdo	lūsi	lūsum
trūd- <i>thrust</i>	trūdĕre	trūdo	trūsi	trūsum
tūd- <i>hammer, thump</i>	tundĕre	tundo	tūtūdi	tunsum or tūsum
quāt- or quāti- <i>strike</i>	quātĕre	quātio	—	quassūm
mēt- <i>mow</i>	mētĕre	mēto	messui	messūm
pēt- or pēti- <i>go, seek</i>	pētĕre	pēto	pētivi	pētītum
mīt- <i>let go, send</i>	mittĕre	mitto	miſi	miſsum
stert- <i>snore</i>	stertĕre	sterto	stertui	
vort- or vert- <i>turn</i>	vortĕre	vorto	vorti	vorsum
sist-* <i>make to stand</i>	sistĕre	sisto	stēti or stīti	statum

The compounds of *da-*, *put* or *give*, with prepositions of one syllable, are all of the third conjugation; as, with

āb, <i>put away, hide</i>	abdĕre	abdo	abdīdi	abdītum
ād, <i>put to, add</i>	addĕre	addo	addīdi	addītum
con, <i>put together</i>	condĕre	condo	condīdi	condītum
dē, <i>put down, surrender</i>	dēdĕre	dēdo	dēdīdi	dēdītum
dīs, <i>distribute</i>	dīdĕre	dīdo	dīdīdi	dīdītum
ēc, <i>put out, utter</i>	ēdĕre	ēdo	ēdīdi	ēdītum
īn, <i>put on</i>	īndĕre	īndo	īndīdi	īndītum
pēr, <i>fordo, destroy</i>	perdĕre	perdo	perdīdi	perdītum
ōb, <i>put to (as a bar)</i>	obdĕre	obdo	obdīdi	obdītum
prō, <i>abandon, betray</i>	prōdĕre	prōdo	prōdīdi	prōdītum
rēd, <i>put back, restore</i>	reddĕre	reddo	reddīdi	reddītum
sūb, <i>put up</i>	subdĕre	subdo	subdīdi	subdītum
trans, <i>hand over</i>	trādĕre	trādo	trādīdi	trādītum

To these add two other compounds of *da-*, *put*:

vend-† <i>exhibit for sale</i>	vendĕre	vendo	vendīdi	vendītum
crēd- <i>trust, believe</i>	crēdĕre	crēdo	crēdīdi	crēdītum

* Or rather *sta-*.

† The first syllable is an abbreviation of *vĕnum*, which occurs in *vĕnum i-re*, *vĕni-re*, *vĕnun-dā-re*.

543

L, M, N.

āl- rear, feed	ālĕre	ālo	ālui	ālītum or altum
fāl- cheat	fallĕre	fallo	fĕfelli	falsum
sāl- salt	sallĕre	sallo	—	salsum
pĕl- push, drive	pellĕre	pello	pĕpŭli	pulsum
vĕl- pull, pluck	vellĕre	vello	velli	volsum
cōl- dig, till	cōlĕre	cōlo	cōlui	cultum
mōl- grind	mōlĕre	mōlo	mōlui	mōlītum
tōl- raise, bear	tollĕre*	tollo	[tĕtŭli or] tŭli	lātum
vōl- wish	velle	vōlo	vōlui	
ēm- take, buy	ēmĕre	ēmo	ēmi	emptum
gēm- groan	gēmĕre	gĕmo	gĕmui	gēmītum
frēm- roar	frēmĕre	frĕmo	frĕmui	frēmītum
prēm- press	prēmĕre	prĕmo	pressi	pressum
trēm- tremble	trēmĕre	trĕmo, trēmui		
cān- sing	cānĕre	cāno	cĕcni	cantum
gĕn- produce	gignĕre	gigno	gĕnui	gĕnītum
līn- smear	līnĕre	līno	lĕvi	lītum
sīn- put, permit	sīnĕre	sīno	sīvi or sii	sītum

546

R, S.

pār- or pāri- produce	pārĕre	pārio	pĕpĕri	partum
quaer-, quaes-† seek, ask	quaerĕre	quaero	quaesīvi	quaesītum
cēr- sift, separate	cernĕre	cerno	crĕvi	crētum
fēr- raise, bear	ferre	fĕro	[tĕtŭli or] tŭli	lātum
gēr- or gēs- wear, carry	gērĕre	gĕro	gessi	gestum
spĕr- reject, despise	spĕrnĕre	spĕrno	sprĕvi	sprētum
sĕr- put	sĕrĕre	sĕro	sĕrui	sertum
sĕr- plant, sow	sĕrĕre	sĕro	sĕvi	sātum
tĕr- rub	tĕrĕre	tĕro	trīvi	tritum
stĕr- strew	sternĕre	sterno	strāvi	strātum
vĕr- sweep	verrĕre	verro	verri	versum
ūr- or ūs- burn	ūrĕre	ūro	ussi	ustum
cūr- run	currĕre	curro	cŭcurri	cursum
pās- or pa- feed	pascĕre	pasco	pāvi	pastum

* In meaning the following go together: *tollĕre, tollo, sustŭli, sublātum*. See *fēr-*.

† *Quaeso* is used in the sense, 'I pray' or 'prithee.'

ěs- <i>be</i>	esse	sum	fui	
vīs- <i>go to see</i>	vīsere	vīso	vīsi	
lācess-* <i>provoke</i>	lācessere	lācesso	lācessivi	lācessitum
fācess-* <i>perform, cause</i>	fācessere	fācesso	fācessi	
arcess-* <i>send for</i>	arcessere	arcesso	arcessivi	arcessitum
cāpess-* <i>take</i>	cāpessere	cāpesso	cāpessivi	cāpessitum

U, V.

548

lāv- <i>wash</i>	lāvère	lāvo	lāvi	lautum or lōtum
tribu- <i>distribute</i>	tribuere	tribuo	tribui	tribūtum
ācu- <i>sharpen</i>	ācuere	ācuo	ācui	ācūtum
argu- <i>prove</i>	arguere	arguo	argui	argūtum
solv- <i>loosen</i>	solvere	solvo	solvi	sōlūtum
volv- <i>roll</i>	volvere	volvo	volvi	vōlūtum
mīnu- <i>lessen</i>	mīnuere	mīnuo	mīnui	mīnūtum
sternu- <i>sneeze</i>	sternuere	sternuo	sternui	
spu- <i>spit</i>	spuere	spuo	spui	spūtum
ru- <i>make to rush, rush</i>	ruere	ruo	rui	rūtum
su- <i>sew</i>	suere	suo	sui	sūtum
stātu- <i>set up</i>	stātuere	stātuo	stātui	stātūtum
mētu- <i>fear</i>	mētuere	mētuo	mētui	

FIRST or A CONJUGATION.

549

da- <i>put, give</i>	dāre	do	dēdi	dātum
sta- <i>make to stand, stand</i>	stāre	sto	stēti	stātum
cūba- <i>lie</i>	cūbāre	cūbo	cūbāvi	cūbātum
nēca- <i>kill</i>	nēcāre	nēco	nēcavi or nēcui	nēcātum
sēca- <i>cut</i>	sēcāre	sēco	sēcāvi	sēcātum
plica- <i>fold</i>	plīcāre	plīco	plīcāvi	plīcātum
mīca- <i>vibrate</i>	mīcāre	mīco	mīcāvi or mīcui	
frīca- <i>rub</i>	frīcāre	frīco	frīcui	frīcātum or frictum
dōma- <i>tame</i>	dōmāre	dōmo	dōmui	dōmītum
sōna- <i>sound</i>	sōnāre	sōno	sōnāvi	sōnātum
		or sōno	sōnui	sōnītum
tōna- <i>thunder</i>	tōnāre	tōnat	tonuit	tōnītum
crēpa- <i>creak, chatter</i>	crēpāre	crēpo	crēpui	crēpītum
vēta- <i>forbid</i>	vētāre	vēto	vētui	vētītum

* These four verbs are formed from *lāci-* or *lāci-*, *fāci-* or *fāci-*, *arci-* (compound of *ci-* 'call'), *cāpi-* or *cāpi-*. So also *pētess-* 'seek,' from *pēt-* or *pēt-*.

<i>lāva- wash</i>	<i>lāvāre</i>	<i>lāvo</i>	<i>lāvāvi</i>	<i>lāvātum</i>
<i>jūva- assist</i>	<i>jūvāre</i>	<i>jūvo</i>	<i>jūvi</i>	<i>jūvātum or jūtum</i>

551 The thirteen disyllabic verbs given in the preceding section were probably at one time all monosyllabic, and consequently of the consonant or third conjugation. The verbs *lāvēre*, *abluēre*, *prōcumbēre*, *plectēre*, &c., are met with in the best authors; and in the older writers there occur such forms as *sōnēre*, *sōnit*, *sōnunt*, *tōnīmus*, &c. Observe too that the same thirteen verbs have all the first vowel short.

552 The other verbs in *a* form their principal parts like

<i>āra- plough</i>	<i>ārāre</i>	<i>āro</i>	<i>ārāvi</i>	<i>ārātum</i>
--------------------	--------------	------------	--------------	---------------

553 SECOND OR *E* CONJUGATION.

<i>hāb-e- hold, have</i>	<i>hābēre</i>	<i>hābeo</i>	<i>hābui</i>	<i>hābītum</i>
<i>sorb-e- suck up</i>	<i>sorbēre</i>	<i>sorbeo</i>	<i>sorbui</i>	
<i>jūb-e- bid, order</i>	<i>jūbēre</i>	<i>jūbeo</i>	<i>jussi</i>	<i>jussum</i>
<i>jāc-e- lie</i>	<i>jācēre</i>	<i>jāceo</i>	<i>jācui</i>	
<i>tāc-e- be silent</i>	<i>tācēre</i>	<i>tāceo</i>	<i>tācui</i>	<i>tācītum</i>
<i>dōc-e- teach</i>	<i>dōcēre</i>	<i>dōceo</i>	<i>dōcui</i>	<i>doctum</i>
<i>nōc-e- do damage</i>	<i>nōcēre</i>	<i>nōceo</i>	<i>nōcui</i>	<i>nōcītum</i>
<i>arc-e- confine, keep off</i>	<i>arcēre</i>	<i>arceo</i>	<i>arcui</i>	
<i>misc-e- mix</i>	<i>miscēre</i>	<i>misceo</i>	<i>miscui</i>	<i>mixtum or mistum</i>
<i>suād-e- recommend</i>	<i>suādēre</i>	<i>suādeo</i>	<i>suāsi</i>	<i>suāsūm</i>
<i>rīd-e- laugh</i>	<i>rīdēre</i>	<i>rīdeo</i>	<i>rīsi</i>	<i>rīsūm</i>
<i>vīd-e- see</i>	<i>vīdēre</i>	<i>vīdeo</i>	<i>vīdi</i>	<i>vīsūm</i>
<i>prand-e- breakfast</i>	<i>prandēre</i>	<i>prandeo</i>	<i>prandi</i>	<i>pransum</i>
<i>pend-e- hang, be suspended</i>	<i>pendēre</i>	<i>pendeo</i>	<i>pēpendi</i>	
<i>spond-e- promise</i>	<i>spondēre</i>	<i>spondeo</i>	<i>spōpondi</i>	<i>sponsum</i>
<i>tond-e- shear</i>	<i>tondēre</i>	<i>tondeo</i>	<i>tōtondi</i>	<i>tonsum</i>
<i>mord-e- bite</i>	<i>mordēre</i>	<i>mordeo</i>	<i>mōmordi</i>	<i>morsum</i>
<i>mulg-e- milk</i>	<i>mulgēre</i>	<i>mulgeo</i>	<i>mulsi</i>	<i>mulctum or mulsum</i>
<i>terg-e- wipe</i>	<i>tergēre</i>	<i>tergeo</i>	<i>tersi</i>	<i>tersum</i>
<i>urg-e- press</i>	<i>urgēre</i>	<i>urgeo</i>	<i>ursi</i>	
<i>aug-e- increase (trans.)</i>	<i>augēre</i>	<i>augeo</i>	<i>auxi</i>	<i>auctum</i>
<i>lūg-e- mourn</i>	<i>lūgēre</i>	<i>lūgeo</i>	<i>luxi</i>	
<i>ci-e- rouse</i>	<i>ciēre</i>	<i>cio</i>	<i>cīvi</i>	<i>cītum</i>
<i>fle- weep</i>	<i>flēre</i>	<i>fleo</i>	<i>flēvi</i>	<i>flētum</i>
<i>ōl-e- smell</i>	<i>ōlēre</i>	<i>ōleo</i>	<i>ōlui</i>	
<i>dōl-e- ache</i>	<i>dōlēre</i>	<i>dōleo</i>	<i>dōlui</i>	

tīm-e- <i>fear</i>	tīmēre	tīmeo	tīmui	
ne- <i>spin</i>	nēre	neo	nēvi	nētum
mān-e- <i>remain</i>	mānēre	māneo	mansi	mansum
tēn-e- <i>hold</i>	tēnēre	tēneo	tēnui	
mōn-e- <i>warn</i>	mōnēre	mōneo	mōnui	mōnītum
torqu-e- <i>twist or hurl</i>	torquēre	torqueo	torsi	tortum
cār-e- <i>be without</i>	cārēre	cāreo	cārui	
pār-e- <i>wait on, obey</i>	pārēre	pāreo	pārui	pārītum
haer-e- <i>stick</i>	haerēre	haereo	haesi	haesum
mēr-e- <i>earn, deserve</i>	mērēre	mēreo	mērui	mērītum
torr-e- <i>roast</i>	torrēre	torreo	torrui	tostum
cen-se- or cēn- <i>count</i>	censēre	censeo	censui	censum
lāt-e- <i>lie hid</i>	lātēre	lāteo	lātui	
nīt-e- <i>shine</i>	nītēre	nīteo	nītui	
cāv-e- <i>be on one's guard</i>	cāvēre	cāveo	cāvi	cautum
fāv-e- <i>wish well</i>	fāvēre	fāveo	fāvi	fautum
pāv-e- <i>fear</i>	pāvēre	pāveo	pāvi	
fōv-e- <i>keep warm</i>	fōvēre	fōveo	fōvi	fōtum
mōv-e- <i>move</i>	mōvēre	mōveo	mōvi	mōtum
vōv-e- <i>vow</i>	vōvēre	vōveo	vōvi	vōtum
ferv-e- <i>boil</i>	fervēre	ferveo	ferbui	

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

i- <i>go</i>	Ire	eo	Ivi or ii	ītum
fulci- <i>prop</i>	fulcīre	fulcio	fulsi	fultum
sanci- <i>hallow</i>	sancīre	sancio	sancīvi	sancītum
		or sancio	sanxi	sanctum
vinci- <i>bind</i>	vincīre	vincio	vinxi	vinctum
farci- <i>cram</i>	farcīre	farcio	farsi	farctum
sarci- <i>mend</i>	sarcīre	sarcio	sarsi	sartum
sāli- <i>leap</i>	sālīre	sālio	sālui or sālii	saltum
sēpeli- <i>bury</i>	sēpeliīre	sēpeliō	sēpeliīvi	sēpultum
vēni- <i>come</i>	vēnīre	vēnio	vēni	ventum
saepi- <i>hedge in</i>	saepīre	saepio	saepsi	saeptum
āperi- <i>open</i>	āperiīre	āperio	āperiui	āpertum
ōperi- <i>cover</i>	ōperiīre	ōperio	ōperiui	ōpertum
hauri- <i>draw (water)</i>	haurīre	haurio	hausi	haustum

The other verbs in *i* form their principal parts like
 audi- *hear* audīre audio audiīvi auditum

555* Some inceptive verbs with a suffix *esc* or *isc* :

lang- <i>droop</i>	languesco	langui	
dīc- <i>learn</i>	disco	dīdīci	
luc- <i>get light</i>	lūciscit	luxit	
ard- <i>burn</i>	ardesco	arsī	
pūt- <i>become putrid</i>	pūtesco	pūtui	
cāl- <i>get hot</i>	cālesco	cālui	
vāl- <i>get strong</i>	vālesco	vālui	
sīl- <i>become silent</i>	sīlesco	sīlui	
quie- <i>become quiet</i>	quiesco	quīēvi	quīētum
cre- <i>grow</i>	cresco	crēvi	crētum
sue- <i>become accustomed</i>	suesco	suēvi	suētum
rē+sāp- <i>come to one's senses again</i>	rēsīpisco	rēsīpīvi	
rē+frig- <i>get cold again</i>	rēfrigesco	rēfrīxi	
rē+vīv- <i>come to life again</i>	rēvīvisco	rēvīxi	
re+sci- <i>find out (a secret)</i>	rescisco	rescīvi	rescītum
cōn+āl- or ōl- <i>grow together</i>	cōālesco	cōālui	cōālītum
ād+ōl- or ōle- <i>grow up</i>	ādōlesco	ādōlui or ādōlēvi	ādultum
āb+ōle- <i>grow out of use</i>	ābōlesco	ābōlēvi	
ob+sōle- <i>get covered with dirt</i>	obsōlesco	obsōlēvi	obsōlētum

555** Compound verbs :

rē+cāp- <i>take back</i>	rēcīpio	rēcāpi	rēceptum
āb+rāp- <i>carry away</i>	abrīpio	abrīpui	abreptum
dis+carp- <i>pull to pieces</i>	discerpo	discerpsi	discerptum
pēr+fāc- or fāci- <i>finish</i>	perfīcio	perfēcī	perfectum
cōn+jāc- or jāci- <i>hurl</i>	cōnīcio	conjēcī	conjectum
ad+lāc- or lāci- <i>draw to</i>	allīcio	allexī	allectum
ec+lāc- or lāci- <i>draw out</i>	ēlīcio	ēlīcui	ēlīcītum
in+spēc- or spēcī- <i>look in</i>	inspīcio	inspexī	inspectum
rēd+āg- <i>drive back</i>	rēdīgo	rēdēgi	rēdactum
cōn+āg- <i>drive together</i>	cōgo	coēgi	coactum
cōn+pāg- <i>fix together</i>	compingo	compēgi	compactum
per+frāg- <i>break through</i>	perfringo	perfrēgi	perfractum
con+tāg- <i>touch closely</i>	contingo	contīgi	contactum
con+lēg- <i>sweep together</i>	collīgo	collēgi	collectum
rē+lēg- <i>read again</i>	rēlēgo	rēlēgi	rēlectum
inter+lēg- <i>perceive</i>	intellēgo	intellexī	intellectum
dī+lēg- <i>esteem</i>	dīlīgo	dīlexī	dīlectum
neg+lēg- <i>leave behind</i>	nēglēgo	nēglexi	nēglectum

pro+rēg- <i>stretch forth</i>	porrigo	porrexi	porrectum
pro+rēg- <i>keep straight on</i>	pergo	perrexi	perrectum
sub+rēg- <i>rise</i>	surgo	surrexi	surrectum
con+flīg- <i>dash together</i>	confīgo	confīxi	conflictum
ec+stīg- <i>stamp out</i>	extinguo	extinxi	extinctum
dis+stīg- <i>spot</i>	distinguo	distinxi	distinctum
ec+mūg- <i>wipe (nose)</i>	ēmungo	ēmunxi	ēmunctum
con+sparg- <i>bespatter</i>	conspergo	conspersi	conspersum
con+pūg- <i>puncture forcibly</i>	compungo	compunxi	compunctum
rē+liq- <i>leave</i>	rēlinquo	rēliqui	rēlictum
ob+cād- <i>set (as sun), die</i>	occido	occidi	occāsum
ob+cād- <i>fall back</i>	reccido	reccidi	reccāsum
ec+vād- <i>come out</i>	ēvādo	ēvāsi	ēvāsum
ob+caed- <i>cut down, kill</i>	occido	occidi	occisum
con+laed- <i>dash together</i>	collido	collisi	collisum
rē+scid- <i>cut away again</i>	rescindo	rescidi	rescisum
dis+fid- <i>cleave in two</i>	diffindo	diffidi	diffissum
rē+sid- <i>subside</i>	resido	resēdi	resessum
di+vid- <i>divide</i>	divido	divisi	divisum
sub+cand- <i>set fire to from below</i>	succendo	succendi	succensum
ec+scand- <i>climb up</i>	escendo	escendi	escensum
dē+fend- <i>ward off</i>	dēfendo	dēfendi	dēfensum
ex+pend- <i>weigh out</i>	expendo	expendi	expensum
prae+hand- <i>take hold of</i>	prehendo	prehendi	prehensum
	or predo	prendi	presum
obs+tend- <i>hold towards</i>	ostendo	ostendi	ostentum or ostensum
ex+clūd- <i>shut out</i>	exclūdo	exclūsi	exclūsum
con+tūd- <i>hammer to pieces</i>	contundo	contūdi	contūsum
per+quāt- <i>strike violently</i>	percūtio	percussi	percussum
rē+sist- <i>stand against</i>	resisto	restīti	restitum
per+cēl- <i>overturn</i>	percello	percūli	perculsum
con+pēl- <i>drive together</i>	compello	compūli	compulsum
rē+pēl- <i>drive back</i>	rēpello	reppūli	rēpulsum
con+sōl- <i>sit together, consult</i>	consūlo	consūlui	consultum
ex+ēm- <i>take out</i>	exīmo	exēmi	exemptum
de+ēm- <i>take down</i>	dēmo	dempsi	demptum
con+ēm- <i>arrange (the hair)</i>	cōmo	compsi	comptum
pro+ēm- <i>bring out</i>	prōmo	prompsi	promptum
sūb+ēm- <i>take up</i>	sūmo	sumpsi	sumptum
rē+prēm- <i>press back</i>	rēprīmo	rēpressi	rēpressum

con+tēm- <i>despise</i>	contemno	contempsi	contemptum
con+cān- <i>sing together</i>	concīno	concīnui	concentum
dē+sīn- (<i>put down</i>) <i>leave off</i>	dēsīno	dēsīi	dēsītum
con+quaer- <i>get together</i>	conquīro	conquīsīvi	conquīsītum
ab+fēr- <i>carry off</i>	aufēro	abstūli	ablātum
ec+fēr- <i>carry out</i>	effēro	extūli	ēlātum
ob+fēr- <i>present</i>	offēro	obtūli	oblātum
rē+fēr- <i>bring back</i>	rēfēro	rettūli	rēlātum or rellātum
con+ser- <i>plant all over</i>	consēro	consēvi	consītum
con+būr- <i>burn up</i>	combūro	combussi	combustum
ob+cūr- <i>run towards</i>	occurro	occurri	occursum
in+du- <i>put on</i>	induo	indui	indūtum
ec+du- <i>put off</i>	exuo	exui	exūtum
dis+lu- or lāv- <i>dissolve</i>	dīluo	dīlui	dīlūtum
ob+ru- <i>overwhelm</i>	obruo	obruī	obrūtum
in+su- <i>sow in</i>	insuo	insui	insūtum
re+stātū- <i>set up again</i>	restītuo	restītui	restītūtum
ec+nēca- <i>kill off</i>	ēnēco	ēnēcāvi	ēnēcātum
	or ēnēco	ēnēcui	ēnectum
ex+plīca- <i>unfold</i>	explīco	explīcāvi	explīcātum
	or explīco	explīcui	explīcūtum
in+crēpa- <i>hide</i>	incrēpo	incrēpāvi	incrēpātum
	or incrēpo	incrēpui	incrēpītum
pro+hābe- <i>keep off</i>	prohībeo	prohībui	prohībītum
de+hābe- <i>owe, ought</i>	dēbeo	dēbui	dēbītum
prae+hābe- <i>present</i>	praebeo	praebui	praebītum
co+arce- <i>confine</i>	coerceo	coercui	coercītum
ex+erce- <i>work out, drill</i>	exerceo	exercui	exercītum
rē+sponde- <i>answer</i>	respondeo	respondi	responsum
in+dulge- <i>be kind</i>	indulgeo	indulsi	indultum
dē+le- or līn- <i>blot out</i>	dēleo	dēlēvi	dēlētum
āb+ōle- <i>abolish</i>	ābōleo	ābōlēvi	ābōlītum
ex+ple- <i>fill up</i>	expleo	explēvi	explētum
rē+tēne- <i>hold back</i>	rētīneo	rētīnui	rētentum
rē+cense- <i>review</i>	rēcenseo	rēcensui	rēcensītum
ex+i- <i>go out</i>	exeo	exiī	exītum
ām+īci- <i>throw round one</i>	āmīcio	āmīcui	āmictum
in+farci- <i>cram in</i>	infercio	infernui	infertum
rē+pāri- <i>find</i>	rēpērio	reppēri	rēpertum
con+pāri- <i>find out</i>	compērio	compēriui	compertum

Reflective verbs :

555†

<i>lāb- slip</i>	<i>lābi</i>	<i>lābor</i>	<i>lapsus</i>
<i>am-plect- embrace</i>	<i>amplecti</i>	<i>amplector</i>	<i>amplexus</i>
<i>lic-e- bid</i>	<i>licēri</i>	<i>liceor</i>	<i>licitus</i>
<i>fung- discharge oneself</i>	<i>fungi</i>	<i>fungor</i>	<i>functus</i>
<i>sēq- follow</i>	<i>sēqui</i>	<i>sēquor</i>	<i>sēcūtus</i>
<i>lōq- talk</i>	<i>lōqui</i>	<i>lōquor</i>	<i>lōcūtus</i>
<i>fru- or frug- feed oneself</i>	<i>frui</i>	<i>fruor</i>	<i>fructus</i>
<i>grād- or grādi- march</i>	<i>grādi</i>	<i>grādiōr</i>	<i>gressus</i>
<i>ec+grād- march out</i>	<i>ēgrēdi</i>	<i>ēgrēdiōr</i>	<i>ēgressus</i>
<i>ordi- begin</i>	<i>ordiri</i>	<i>ordior</i>	<i>orsus</i>
<i>fāt-e- confess</i>	<i>fātēri</i>	<i>fāteor</i>	<i>fassus</i>
<i>pro+fāt-e- profess</i>	<i>prōfītēri</i>	<i>prōfīteor</i>	<i>prōfessus</i>
<i>pāt- or pāti- suffer</i>	<i>pāti</i>	<i>pātiōr</i>	<i>passus</i>
<i>per+pat- suffer to the last</i>	<i>perpēti</i>	<i>perpētiōr</i>	<i>perpeesus</i>
<i>nīt- strain</i>	<i>nīti</i>	<i>nītor</i>	<i>nīsus or nixus</i>
<i>mēn- or mēti- measure</i>	<i>mētiri</i>	<i>mētiōr</i>	<i>mensus</i>
<i>ad+ēn- or senti- agree with</i>	<i>assentiri</i>	<i>assentiōr</i>	<i>assensus</i>
<i>ūt- use</i>	<i>ūti</i>	<i>ūtor</i>	<i>ūsus</i>
<i>ex+pēri- try</i>	<i>expēiri</i>	<i>expēiōr</i>	<i>expertus</i>
<i>ob+pēri- wait for</i>	<i>oppēiri</i>	<i>oppēiōr</i>	<i>opperitus or oppertus</i>
<i>quēr- complain</i>	<i>quēri</i>	<i>quēror</i>	<i>questus</i>
<i>ōr- or ōri- rise</i>	<i>ōriri</i>	<i>ōrior</i>	<i>ortus</i>
<i>mōr- or mōri- die</i>	<i>mōri</i>	<i>mōrior</i>	<i>mortuus</i>
<i>re- reckon</i>	<i>rēri</i>	<i>reor</i>	<i>rātus</i>
<i>mēr-e- earn</i>	<i>mērēri</i>	<i>mēreor</i>	<i>mērītus</i>
<i>vēr-e- fear</i>	<i>vērēri</i>	<i>vēreor</i>	<i>vērītus</i>
<i>tu- or tue- guard</i>	<i>tuēri</i>	<i>tueor</i>	<i>tuītus or tūtus</i>
<i>āp- obtain</i>	<i>āpisci</i>	<i>āpiscor</i>	<i>aptus</i>
<i>ād+āp- obtain</i>	<i>ādīpisci</i>	<i>ādīpiscor</i>	<i>adeptus</i>
<i>pro+fāc- set out</i>	<i>prōfīcisci</i>	<i>prōfīscor</i>	<i>prōfectus</i>
<i>nāc- obtain by chance</i>	<i>nancisci</i>	<i>nanciscor</i>	<i>nactus or nactus</i>
<i>pāc- fix, bargain</i>	<i>pācisci</i>	<i>pāciscor</i>	<i>pactus</i>
<i>ulc- avenge</i>	<i>ulcisci</i>	<i>ulciscor</i>	<i>ultus</i>
<i>ex+por+rēg- wake up</i>	<i>exporgisci</i>	<i>exporgiscor</i>	<i>exporrectus</i>
<i>dē+fāt- give in</i>	<i>dēfētisci</i>	<i>dēfētiscor</i>	<i>dēfessus</i>
<i>con+mēn- invent</i>	<i>commīnisci</i>	<i>commīniscor</i>	<i>commentus</i>
<i>ob+līv- forget</i>	<i>oblivisci</i>	<i>obliviscor</i>	<i>oblitus</i>

Last letter Conjugation		a 1	e 2	consonant 3	u 3	i 4
Lat. C.F. English		āra- <i>plough</i>	dōce- <i>teach</i>	scrib- <i>write</i>	ācu- <i>sharpen</i>	audi- <i>hear</i>
INDICATIVE MOOD.	Present Tense.	S. ārō ārās ārāt P. ārāmūs ārātīs ārant	dōceō dōcēs dōcēt dōcēmūs dōcētīs dōcent	scribō scribīs scribīt scribīmūs scribītīs scribunt	ācuō ācuīs ācuīt ācuīmūs ācuītīs ācuunt*	audiō audīs audīt audīmūs audītīs audiunt
	Past Imperfect Tense.	S. ārābam ārābās ārābāt P. ārābāmūs ārābātīs ārābant	dōcebam dōcebās dōcebāt dōcebāmūs dōcebātīs dōcebant	scribēbam scribēbās scribēbāt scribēbāmūs scribēbātīs scribēbant	ācuēbam ācuēbās ācuēbāt ācuēbāmūs ācuēbātīs ācuēbant	audiēbam audiēbās audiēbāt audiēbāmūs audiēbātīs audiēbant
	Future Tense.	S. ārābō ārābīs ārābīt P. ārābīmūs ārābītīs ārābunt	dōcebō dōcebīs dōcebīt dōcebīmūs dōcebītīs dōcebunt	scribam scribēs scribēt scribēmūs scribētīs scribent	ācuam ācuēs ācuēt ācuēmūs ācuētīs ācuent	audiam audiēs audiēt audiēmūs audiētīs audient
IMPERATIVE MOOD.	Present	S. 2. ārā P. 2. ārātē.	dōcē dōcētē	scribē scribītē	ācuē ācuītē	audi auditē
	Future.	S. 2. ārātō ārātō P. 2. ārātōtē ārantō	dōcētō dōcētō dōcētōtē dōcentō	scribītō scribītō scribītōtē scribuntō	ācuītō ācuītō ācuītōtē ācuuntō	auditō auditō auditōtē audiuntō
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present Tense.	S. ārem ārēs ārēt P. ārēmūs ārētīs ārent	dōceam dōceās dōceāt dōceāmūs dōceātīs dōceant	scribam scribās scribāt scribāmūs scribātīs scribant	ācuam ācuās ācuāt ācuāmūs ācuātīs ācuant	audiam audiās audiāt audiāmūs audiātīs audiant
	Past Tense.	S. ārārem ārārēs ārārēt P. ārārēmūs ārārētīs ārārent	dōcērem dōcērēs dōcērēt dōcērēmūs dōcērētīs dōcērent	scribērem scribērēs scribērēt scribērēmūs scribērētīs scribērent	ācuērem ācuērēs ācuērēt ācuērēmūs ācuērētīs ācuērent	audirem audirēs audirēt audirēmūs audirētīs audirent

* Or *acuont*.

Last letter Conjugat.	a 1	e 2	consonant 3	u 3	i 4
Latin English	āra- <i>plough</i>	dōce- <i>teach</i>	scrib- <i>write</i>	ācu- <i>sharpen</i>	audi- <i>hear</i>
INFINI- TIVE MOOD.	ārārē	dōcērē	scribērē	ācuērē	audirē
PARTICI- PLE.*	āranti- or ārant-	dōcenti- or dōcent-	scribenti- or scribent-	ācuenti- or ācuent-	audienti- or audient-
PART. FUTURE.	ārātūro- or —a-	doctūro- or —a-	scriptūro- or —a-	ācūtūro- or —a-	auditūro- or —a-
GER UNDT†	ārando-	dōcendo-	scribendo-	ācuendo-	audiendo-

There are certain verbs which mix together the consonant and 557 *i* conjugations in the imperfect tenses, viz.:

fāc- or fāci- <i>make</i>	fōd- or fōdi- <i>dig</i>	sāp- or sāpi- <i>taste</i>
jāc- „ jāci- <i>throw</i>	fūg- „ fūgi- <i>fly</i>	cūp- „ cūpi- <i>desire</i>
[lāc-† „ lāci-] <i>draw</i>	cāp- „ cāpi- <i>take</i>	pār- „ pāri- <i>produce</i>
[spēc-† „ spēcī-] <i>look</i>	rāp- „ rāpi- <i>seize</i>	quāt- „ quāti- <i>shake</i> .

Together with the reflexive verbs:

grād- or grādi- <i>march</i>	mōr- or mōri- <i>die</i>	pōt- or pōti- <i>make</i>
ōr- „ ōri- <i>rise</i>	pāt- „ pāti- <i>suffer</i>	oneself <i>master</i> .

Observe too that all these seventeen verbs have the vowel short.

Conjugation of the imperfect tenses of verbs which mix to- 558
gether the consonant and *i* conjugations:

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Fūg- or fūgi- *fly*.

Present Tense.

S. fugio, fugis, fugit. *P.* fugimus, fugitis, fugiunt.

Past-Imperfect.

Future.

S. fugiebam, fugiebas, &c. *S.* fugiam, fugies, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. fugē. *P.* fugite.

* Declined like *praesenti-* or *praesent-*. See § 219.

† Declined like a neuter noun in *o-*. ‡ Used only in compounds.

Future.

S. 2. fugīto, 3. fugīto. *P.* 2. fugītote, 3. fugiunto.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Past Tense.*

S. fugiam, fugiās, &c.

S. fugērem, fugērēs, &c.

INFINITIVE, fugere. PARTICIPLE, fugienti- or fugient-.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE, fugīturo-. GERUND, fugiendo-.

- 559 Observe that those forms which have the short vowels marked follow the consonant conjugation ; the others are derived as from a verb in *i*.

561 CONJUGATION OF PERFECT TENSES.

Crude form of perfect, āra-vis-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect or Aorist.

S. āravī, āravistī, āravit.

P. āravīmūs, āravistīs, āravērunt
or āravērē.

Past-Perfect.

S. āravēram, āravērās, āravērāt. *P.* āravērāmūs, āravērātīs, āravērant.

Future-Perfect.

S. āravērō, āravērīs, āravērīt. *P.* āravērīmūs, āravērītīs, āravērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect or Aorist.

S. āravērim, āravērīs, āravērīt. *P.* āravērīmūs, āravērītīs, āravērint.

Past-Perfect.

S. āravissem, āravissēs, āravissēt. *P.* āravissēmūs, āravissētīs, āravissent.

INFINITIVE, āravisse.

PARTICIPLE, ārāto-.

- 562 The conjugation of a perfect which takes the suffix *is* instead of *vis* differs in the absence of the *v*. See §§ 584, 588, 590, 613, &c.

- 563 The perfect tenses often undergo a contraction : as,

āravī	āravīmūs
āravistī or ārastī	āravistīs or ārastīs
āravit	āravērunt or ārarunt or āravērē.
āravēram or ārāram, &c.	
āravērō ,, ārārō, &c.	
āravērim ,, ārārim, &c.	
āravissem ,, ārassem, &c.	
āravissē ,, ārassē.	

In the perfects of the *i* conjugation similar contractions occur : as,

audivī or audiī

audivistī, audiistī, or audistī

audivit or audiit

audivīmūs or audiīmūs

audivistīs, audiistīs, or audistīs

audivērunt or audierunt, or
audivērē or audierē.

audivēram or audieram, &c.

audivērē , , audierē, &c.

audivērim , , audierim, &c.

audivissem , , audissem or audissem, &c.

audivissē , , audiissē or audissē.

REFLECTIVE OR PASSIVE VERBS.

570

CONJUGATION OF IMPERFECT TENSES.

Last letter a Conjugation 1		e 2	consonant 3	u 3	i 4	
Latin	orna- dress	dōce- teach	vort- turn	mētū- fear	audi- hear	
INDICATIVE MOOD.	Present Tense.	S.ornōr ornāris <i>or</i> ornārē ornātūr P.ornāmūr ornāminī ornantūr	dōceōr dōcēris <i>or</i> dōcērē dōcētūr dōcemūr dōcēminī dōcentūr	vortōr vortēris <i>or</i> vortērē vortītūr vortīmūr vortīminī vortuntūr	mētūōr mētūēris <i>or</i> mētūērē mētuitūr mētūimūr mētūiminī mētuintūr*	audiōr audiēris <i>or</i> audiērē auditūr audīmūr audīminī audiuntūr
	Past-Imperfect Tense.	S.ornābār ornābāris <i>or</i> ornābārē ornābātūr P.ornābāmūr ornābāminī ornābantūr	dōcebār dōcebāris <i>or</i> dōcebārē dōcebātūr dōcebāmūr dōcebāminī dōcebantūr	vortēbār vortēbāris <i>or</i> vortēbārē vortēbātūr vortēbāmūr vortēbāminī vortēbantūr	mētuebār mētuebāris <i>or</i> mētuebārē mētuebātūr mētuebāmūr mētuebāminī mētuebantūr	audiēbār audiēbāris <i>or</i> audiēbārē audiēbātūr audiēbāmūr audiēbāminī audiēbantūr
	Future Tense.	S.ornābōr ornābēris <i>or</i> ornābērē ornābītūr P.ornābīmūr ornābīminī ornābuntūr	dōcebōr dōcebēris <i>or</i> dōcebērē dōcebītūr dōcebīmūr dōcebīminī dōcebuntūr	vortār vortēris <i>or</i> vortērē vortētūr vortēmūr vortēminī vortentūr	mētūār mētūēris <i>or</i> mētūērē mētuetūr mētūēmūr mētūēminī mētuentūr	audiār audiēris <i>or</i> audiērē audietūr audiēmūr audiēminī audientūr

* Or *mētuintur*.

Last letter Conjugation		a 1	e 2	consonant 3	u 3	i 4
Latin English		orna- dress	döce- teach	vort- turn	mētu- fear	audi- hear
IMPERATIVE MOOD.	Present	S. 2. ornärē P. 2. ornāmīnī	döcērē döcēmīnī	vortērē vortīmīnī	mētuērē mētuīmīnī	audīrē audīmīnī
	Future.	S. 2. } ornātör 3. } P. 3. ornantör	döcētör döcentör	vortītör vortuntör	mētuītör mētuuntör†	audītör* audiuntör
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present Tense.	S. ornēr ornērīs or ornērē ornētūr P. ornēmūr ornēmīnī ornentūr	döceär döceärīs or döceärē döceätūr döceämūr döceämīnī döceantūr	vortär vortärīs or vortärē vortätūr vortämūr vortämīnī vortantūr	mētuär mētuärīs or mētuärē mētuätūr mētuämūr mētuämīnī mētuantūr	audiär audiärīs or audiärē audiätūr audiämūr audiämīnī audiantūr
	Past Tense.	S. ornärēr ornärērīs or ornärērē ornärētūr P. ornärēmūr ornärēmīnī ornärentūr	döcērēr döcērērīs or döcērērē döcērētūr döcērēmūr döcērēmīnī döcērentūr	vortērēr vortērērīs or vortērērē vortērētūr vortērēmūr vortērēmīnī vortērentūr	mētuērēr mētuērērīs or mētuērērē mētuērētūr mētuērēmūr mētuērēmīnī mētuērentur	audīrēr audīrērīs or audīrērē audīrētūr audīrēmūr audīrēmīnī audīrentūr
INFINITIVE MOOD.‡		ornärīēr or ornärī	döcērīēr or döcērī	vortier or vortī	mētuier or mētuī	audirīēr or audirī
PARTICIPLE.§		ornando-	döcendo-	vortendo-	mētuendo-	audiendo-

571 Conjugation of the imperfect tenses of reflective or passive verbs which mix together the consonant and *i* conjugations. (See § 557.)

C.F. mör- or mōri-, die.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. mōriör, mörērīs or mörērē, mör- P. mörīmūr, mörīmīnī, mōri-
rītūr. untūr.

Past-Imperfect.

Future.

S. mōriēbär, mōriēbärīs, &c. S. mōriär, mōriärīs, &c.

* For the 2 and 3 p. sing. there was also an old form in *mīno*.

† Or *mētuontör*. ‡ The infinitives in *ēr* belong to the old language.

§ Merely reflective verbs have also participles in *ent-* or *entī-*, and in *tūro-*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. mörërë.

P. mörimni.

Future.

S. 2. mörîtör, 3. mörîtör.

P. 3. möriuntör.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. möriär, möriäris, &c.

Past Tense.

S. mörërër, mörërëris, &c.

INFINITIVE, mörî.

PARTICIPLE IMPERFECT, mörienti- or mörient-.

GERUND, möriundo-.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE, mörîtüro-.

Ori-, rise, and pöti-, make oneself master, partake more of the 572
i conjugation: as, örîrer, örîri; pötîris, pötîtur, pötîmur, pötîrer,
pötîri.

The perfect tenses of a reflective or passive verb are formed by 573
the perfect participle in to- and the verbs ës- or fu-.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES OF A REFLECTIVE OR PASSIVE VERB. 574

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect or Aorist.

S. ornâtûs sum	or fui	P. ornâtî sümûs	or fuimûs
ornatus ës	„ fuistî	ornati estîs	„ fuistîs
ornatus est	„ fuit	ornati sunt	fuêrunt or fuêrë

Past-Perfect.

S. ornatus êram	or fuêram	P. ornati êrämûs	or fuêrämûs
ornatus êräs	„ fuêräs	ornati êrätîs	„ fuêrätîs
ornatus êrät	„ fuêrät	ornati êrant	„ fuêrant

Future-Perfect.

S. ornatus êro	or fuêro	P. ornati êrîmûs	or fuêrîmûs
ornatus êris	„ fuêris	ornati êritîs	„ fuêritîs
ornatus êrit	„ fuêrit	ornati êrunt	„ fuêrint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect or Aorist.

S. ornatus sim	or fuêrim	P. ornati simûs	or fuêrîmûs
ornatus sis	„ fuêris	ornati sitîs	„ fuêritîs
ornatus sît	„ fuêrit	ornati sint	„ fuêrint

Past-Perfect.

<i>S.</i> ornatus essem	<i>or</i> fuissem	<i>P.</i> ornati essēmūs <i>or</i> fuissēmūs
ornatus essēs	„ fuissēs	ornati essētīs „ fuissētīs
ornatus essēt	„ fuissēt	ornati essent „ fuissent

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ornātūs essē *or* fuissē.575 CONJUGATION OF AN ACTIVE VERB, WITH THE
ENGLISH TRANSLATION.C.F. SCRIB-, *write*.*Principal parts:* scribērē, scrib-, scrips-, scriptu-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, scrib-.*As a present-imperfect, am —ing :*

Ad frātre ^m meum scribo,	<i>I am writing to my brother.</i>
Ad fratrem tuum scribis,*	<i>You* are writing to your brother.</i>
Ad fratrem suum scribit,	<i>He is writing to his brother.</i>
Ad fratrem nostrum scribimus,	<i>We are writing to our brother.</i>
Ad fratrem vostrum scribitis,	<i>You† are writing to your brother.</i>
Ad fratrem suum scribunt,	<i>They are writing to their brother.</i>

576 ——— as an historic present :

Postērō diē ād sēnem scribo,	<i>The next day I write to the old man.</i>
Postero die ad senem scribis,*	<i>The next day you* write to the old man.</i>
Postero die ad senem scribit,	<i>The next day he writes to the old man.</i>
Postero die ad senem scribi-	<i>The next day we write to the old man.</i>
mus,	
Postero die ad senem scribi-	<i>The next day you† write to the old man.</i>
tis,†	
Postero die ad senem scribunt,	<i>The next day they write to the old man.</i>

577 ——— as a present of custom :

Egō cālāmō scribo,	<i>I‡ write with a reed.</i>
Tū pinnā scribis,	<i>You write with a pen.</i>
Illē stīlō scribit,	<i>He (yonder) writes with a stile.‡</i>

* Where *you* means only one person; or *thou art writing, thou writest* may be used. † Where *you* means more than one person.

‡ These pronouns must be pronounced emphatically.

§ A Roman instrument for writing on waxen tablets.

Nōs cālāmīs scribimus,	<i>We* write with reeds.</i>
Vōs pinnīs scribitis,	<i>You write with pens.</i>
Illī stīlīs scribunt,	<i>They (yonder) write with stiles.</i>

—— as a present, translated by do:

578

Ego vērō scribo,	<i>Yes I do write.</i>
Tu vero scribis,	<i>Yes you do write.</i>
Ille vero scribit,	<i>Yes he does write.</i>
Nos vero scribimus,	<i>Yes we do write.</i>
Vos vero scribitis,	<i>Yes you do write.</i>
Illi vero scribunt,	<i>Yes they do write.</i>

—— as a present, including past time, have been ——ing:

579

Jam duās hōrās scribo,	<i>I have been writing now two hours.</i>
Jam duas horas scribis,	<i>You have been writing now two hours.</i>
Jam duas horas scribit,	<i>He has been writing now two hours.</i>
Jam duas horas scribimus,	<i>We have been writing now two hours.</i>
Jam duas horas scribitis,	<i>You have been writing now two hours.</i>
Jam duas horas scribunt,	<i>They have been writing now two hours.</i>

Past-Imperfect, scribēba-.

580

As a past-imperfect, was ——ing:

Scribēbam cum puēr intrāvit,	<i>I was writing when the boy came in.</i>
Scribebās cum puer intravit,	<i>You were writing when the boy came in.</i> [in.]
Scribebāt cum puer intravit,	<i>He was writing when the boy came</i>
Scribēbāmūs cum puer intravit,	<i>We were writing when the boy came in.</i>
Scribebātīs cum puer intravit,	<i>You were writing when the boy came in.</i> [came in.]
Scribebant cum puer intravit,	<i>They were writing when the boy</i>

—— as a past tense of custom, used to ——:

581

Egō cālāmō scribebam,	<i>I used† to write with a reed.</i>
Tū pinnā scribebas,	<i>You used to write with a pen.</i>
Illē stīlō scribebat,	<i>He (yonder) used to write with a stile.</i>

* These pronouns must be pronounced emphatically.

† Or *I wrote*, &c.

Nōs cālāmīs scribebāmus,	<i>We used to write with reeds.</i>
Vōs pinnīs scribebātis,	<i>You used to write with pens.</i>
Illī stīlīs scribebant,	<i>They (yonder) used to write with stiles.</i>

582 — as a past tense, including time preceding, *had been* — *ing* :

Jam trīs hōrās scribebam,	<i>I had been then writing three hours.</i>
Jam trīs horas scribebas,	<i>You had been then writing three hours.</i>
Jam trīs horas scribebat,	<i>He had been then writing three hours.</i>
Jam trīs horas scribebāmus,	<i>We had been then writing three hours.</i>
Jam trīs horas scribebātis,	<i>You had been then writing three hours.</i>
Jam trīs horas scribebant,	<i>They had been then writing three hours.</i>

Future Tense, scriba- or scribe-.

583 Translated by *shall, will* :

Crās mănē scribam,	<i>I shall write tomorrow morning.</i>
Cras mane scribēs,	<i>You will write tomorrow morning.</i>
Cras mane scribēt,	<i>He will write tomorrow morning.</i>
Cras mane scribēmūs,	<i>We shall write tomorrow morning.</i>
Cras mane scribētīs,	<i>You will write tomorrow morning.</i>
Cras mane scribent,	<i>They will write tomorrow morning.</i>

Present-Perfect Tense, scripsis-.

584 As a present-perfect, *have* — *en* : *

Quattuor epistolās scripsī,	<i>I have written four letters.</i>
Quattuor epistolas scripsisti,	<i>You have written four letters.</i>
Quattuor epistolas scripsit,	<i>He has written four letters.</i>
Quattuor epistolas scripsimūs,	<i>We have written four letters.</i>
Quattuor epistolas scripsistīs,	<i>You have written four letters.</i>
Quattuor epistolas scripserunt,	<i>They have written four letters.</i>

585 — as an aorist, translated by the English past :

Hērī ād nēgōtiātōrem scripsī,	<i>I wrote yesterday to the merchant.</i>
Hērī ad negotiatorem scripsisti,	<i>You wrote yesterday to the merchant.</i>
Hērī ad negotiatorem scripsit,	<i>He wrote yesterday to the merchant.</i>
Hērī ad negotiatorem scripsimus,	<i>We wrote yesterday to the merchant.</i>
Hērī ad negotiatorem scripsistīs,	<i>You wrote yesterday to the merchant.</i>
Hērī ad negotiatorem scripse-	<i>They wrote yesterday to the mer-</i>
runt,	<i>chant.</i>

* That is, the perfect participle of the English verb.

—— as an aorist, translated by *did* : 586

Ego vero scripsi,	<i>Yes I did write.</i>
Tu vero scripsisti,	<i>Yes you did write.</i>
Ille vero scripsit,	<i>Yes he did write.</i>
Nos vero scripsimus,	<i>Yes we did write.</i>
Vos vero scripsistis,	<i>Yes you did write.</i>
Illi vero scripserunt,	<i>Yes they did write.</i>

—— translated by an English present (condition) : 587

Ego si scripsi, Caesar rescribît,	<i>If I write, Cæsar writes again.</i>
Tu si scripsisti, Caesar rescribit,	<i>If you write, Cæsar writes again.</i>
Is si scripsit, Caesar rescribit,	<i>If he writes, Cæsar writes again.</i>
Nos si scripsimus, Caesar rescribit,	<i>If we write, Cæsar writes again.</i>
Vos si scripsistis, Caesar rescribit,	<i>If you write, Cæsar writes again.</i>
Hi si scripserunt, Caesar rescribit,	<i>If they write, Cæsar writes again.</i>

Past-Perfect, scripsēra-. 588

Translated by *had* —— *en* :

Antē id tempus scripsēram,	<i>I had written before that time.</i>
Ante id tempus scripsērās,	<i>You had written before that time.</i>
Ante id tempus scripsērāt,	<i>He had written before that time.</i>
Ante id tempus scripsērāmūs,	<i>We had written before that time.</i>
Ante id tempus scripsērātīs,	<i>You had written before that time.</i>
Ante id tempus scripsērant,	<i>They had written before that time.</i>

—— translated by an English past : 589

Ego si scripseram, Caesar rescribē-	<i>If I* wrote, Cæsar wrote again.</i>
bāt,	
Tu si scripseras, Caesar rescribebat,	<i>If you wrote, Cæsar wrote again.</i>
Is si scripserat, Caesar rescribebat,	<i>If he wrote, Cæsar wrote again.</i>
Nos si scripseramus, Caesar rescri-	<i>If we wrote, Cæsar wrote again.</i>
bebat,	
Vos si scripseratis, Caesar rescri-	<i>If you wrote, Cæsar wrote again.</i>
bebat,	
Hi si scripserant, Caesar rescribe-	<i>If they wrote, Cæsar wrote again.</i>
bat,	

* Pronounce these pronouns emphatically.

590

Future-Perfect, scripsēr-.Translated by *shall have* —en, *will have* —en:

Antē noctem scripsēro,	<i>I shall have written before night.</i>
Ante noctem scripsēris,	<i>You will have written before night.</i>
Ante noctem scripsērit,	<i>He will have written before night.</i>
Ante noctem scripsērīmūs,	<i>We shall have written before night.</i>
Ante noctem scripsērītīs,	<i>You will have written before night.</i>
Ante noctem scripsērint,	<i>They will have written before night.</i>

591 ——— translated by an English present (condition):

Ego si scripsero, Caesar rescribēt,	<i>If I write, Cæsar will write again.</i>
Tu si scripseris, Caesar rescribet,	<i>If you write, Cæsar will write again.</i>
Is si scripserit, Caesar rescribet,	<i>If he writes, Cæsar will write again.</i>
Nos si scripserimus, Caesar rescribet,	<i>If we write, Cæsar will write again.</i>
Vos si scripseritis, Caesar rescribet,	<i>If you write, Cæsar will write again.</i>
Hi si scripserint, Caesar rescribet,	<i>If they write, Cæsar will write again.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

592 Translated by the simple verb :

Scribē ad patrem tuom,	<i>Write to your father.</i>
Scribītē ad patrem vostrum,	<i>Write to your father.</i>

Future, with suffix to-.593 Translated by *shall, must, let* :

Scribītō, <i>Thou shalt write.</i>	Scribītōtē, <i>Ye shall write.</i>
Scribītō, <i>He shall write.</i>	Scribuntō, <i>They shall write.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, scribā-.594 As a present-imperfect, *am* —ing (indirect interrogative) :

Nescio quid scribam,	<i>I know not what I am writing.</i>
Nescio quid scribās,	<i>I know not what you are writing.</i>
Nescio quid scribāt,	<i>I know not what he is writing.</i>
Nescio quid scribāmūs,	<i>I know not what we are writing.</i>
Nescio quid scribātīs,	<i>I know not what you are writing.</i>
Nescio quid scribant,	<i>I know not what they are writing.</i>

—— translated by an indicative present (result) : 595

Indē fit ut nihil de hac rē scribam,	<i>Hence it happens that I write nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde fit ut nihil de hac re scribas,	<i>Hence it happens that you write nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde fit ut nihil de hac re scribat,	<i>Hence it happens that he writes nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde fit ut nihil de hac re scribamus,	<i>Hence it happens that we write nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde fit ut nihil de hac re scribatis,	<i>Hence it happens that you write nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde fit ut nihil de hac re scribant,	<i>Hence it happens that they write nothing on this subject.</i>

—— translated by *do* (concession) : 596

Ut scribam, nōn est sātīs,	<i>Even granting that I do write, it is not enough.</i>
Ut scribas, non est satis,	<i>Even granting that you do write, it is not enough.</i>
Ut scribat, non est satis,	<i>Even granting that he does write, it is not enough.</i>
Ut scribamus, non est satis,	<i>Even granting that we do write, it is not enough.</i>
Ut scribatis, non est satis,	<i>Even granting that you do write, it is not enough.</i>
Ut scribant, non est satis,	<i>Even granting that they do write, it is not enough.</i>

—— translated by *should, would* (hypothesis) : 597

Si pinnā mīhī sit, scribam,	<i>If there were a pen for me, I would write.</i>
Si pinna tibi sit, scribas,	<i>If there were a pen for you, you would write.</i>
Si pinna ei sit, scribat,	<i>If there were a pen for him, he would write.</i>
Si pinnae nobis sint, scribamus,	<i>If there were pens for us, we would write.</i>
Si pinnae vobis sint, scribatis,	<i>If there were pens for you, you would write.</i>
Si pinnae his sint, scribant,	<i>If there were pens for them, they would write.</i>

598 ——— translated by *were* ———ing :

Sēdeō hīc, tanquam scribam,	<i>I sit here, as if I were writing.</i>
Sēdēs istīc, tanquam scribas,	<i>You sit there, as if you were writing.</i>
Sēdēt illīc, tanquam scribat,	<i>He sits yonder, as if he were writing.</i>
Sēdemūs hīc, tanquam scribamus,	<i>We sit here, as if we were writing.</i>
Sēdētis istīc, tanquam scribatis,	<i>You sit there, as if you were writing.</i>
Sēdent illīc, tanquam scribant,	<i>They sit yonder, as if they were writing.</i>

599 ——— translated by *may* (object) :

Pinnā dātur, quā* scribam,	<i>The pen is given, that I may write with* it.</i>
Pinna datur, qua scribas,	<i>The pen is given, that you may write with it.</i>
Pinna datur, qua scribat,	<i>The pen is given, that he may write with it.</i>
Pinna datur, qua scribamus,	<i>The pen is given, that we may write with it.</i>
Pinna datur, qua scribatis,	<i>The pen is given, that you may write with it.</i>
Pinna datur, qua scribant,	<i>The pen is given, that they may write with it.</i>

599* ——— translated by *must* or *shall* (command) :

Lex est ut scribam,	<i>There is a law that I must write.</i>
Lex est ut scribas,	<i>There is a law that you must write.</i>
Lex est ut scribat,	<i>There is a law that he must write.</i>
Lex est ut scribamus,	<i>There is a law that we must write.</i>
Lex est ut scribatis,	<i>There is a law that you must write.</i>
Lex est ut scribant,	<i>There is a law that they must write.</i>

600 ——— translated by *to* (indirect interrogative) :

Nescio quid scribam,	<i>I know not what to write.</i>
Nescis quid scribas,	<i>You know not what to write.</i>
Nescit quid scribat,	<i>He knows not what to write.</i>
Nescimus quid scribamus,	<i>We know not what to write.</i>
Nescitis quid scribatis,	<i>You know not what to write.</i>
Nesciunt quid scribant,	<i>They know not what to write.</i>

* Literally, *with which*.

—— translated by *shall, will* :

601

Puer timet nē scribam,	<i>The boy is afraid I shall write.</i>
Puer timet ne scribas,	<i>The boy is afraid you will write.</i>
Puer timet ne scribat,	<i>The boy is afraid he will write.</i>
Puer timet ne scribamus,	<i>The boy is afraid we shall write.</i>
Puer timet ne scribatis,	<i>The boy is afraid you will write.</i>
Puer timet ne scribant,	<i>The boy is afraid they will write.</i>

—— translated by *from* —— *ing* :

602

Hoc impēdit nē scribam,	<i>This prevents me from writing.</i>
Hoc impedit ne scribas,	<i>This prevents you from writing.</i>
Hoc impedit ne scribat,	<i>This prevents him from writing.</i>
Hoc impedit ne scribamus,	<i>This prevents us from writing.</i>
Hoc impedit ne scribatis,	<i>This prevents you from writing.</i>
Hoc impedit ne scribant,	<i>This prevents them from writing.</i>

—— translated by English infinitive :

*602

Sinē scribam,	<i>Let me write.</i>	Sine scribamus,	<i>Let us write.</i>
Sine scribat,	<i>Let him write.</i>	Sine scribant,	<i>Let them write.</i>

—— translated as an imperative mood :

†602

Nē scribam,	<i>Let me not write.</i>	Ne scribamus,	<i>Let us not write.</i>
Ne scribas,	<i>Do not write.</i>	Ne scribatis,	<i>Do not write.</i>
Ne scribat,	<i>Let him not write.</i>	Ne scribant,	<i>Let them not write.</i>

Past Tense, scribēre.

603

As a past-imperfect, *was* —— *ing* (indirect interrogative) :

Nesciebam quid scribērem,	<i>I knew not what I was writing.</i>
Nesciebam quid scribērēs,	<i>I knew not what you were writing.</i>
Nesciebam quid scribērēt,	<i>I knew not what he was writing.</i>
Nesciebam quid scribērēmūs,	<i>I knew not what we were writing.</i>
Nesciebam quid scribērētis,	<i>I knew not what you were writing.</i>
Nesciebam quid scribērent,	<i>I knew not what they were writing.</i>

—— translated by an English past (result) :

604

Indē factum est ut nihil de hāc rē scribērem,	<i>Hence it happened that I wrote nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde factum est ut nihil de hac re scriberēs,	<i>Hence it happened that you wrote nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde factum est ut nihil de hac re scriberet,	<i>Hence it happened that he wrote nothing on this subject.</i>

Inde factum est ut nihil de hac re scriberemus,	<i>Hence it happened that we wrote nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde factum est ut nihil de hac re scriberetis,	<i>Hence it happened that you wrote nothing on this subject.</i>
Inde factum est ut nihil de hac re scriberent,	<i>Hence it happened that they wrote nothing on this subject.</i>

605 ——— translated by *should* or *would have* ———en (hypothesis):

Si pinnā mīhī esset, scriberem,	<i>If there had been a pen for me, I should have been writing.</i>
Si pinna tibi esset, scriberes,	<i>If there had been a pen for you, you would have been writing.</i>
Si pinna ei esset, scriberet,	<i>If there had been a pen for him, he would have been writing.</i>
Si pinnae nobis essent, scribere- mus,	<i>If there had been pens for us, we should have been writing.</i>
Si pinnae vobis essent, scribere- tis,	<i>If there had been pens for you, you would have been writing.</i>
Si pinnae his essent, scriberent,	<i>If there had been pens for them, they would have been writing.</i>

606 ——— translated by *had been* ———ing:

Sēdēbam hīc, tanquam scriberem,	<i>I was sitting here, as if I had been writing.</i>
Sēdēbās istīc, tanquam scriberes,	<i>You were sitting there, as if you had been writing.</i>
Sēdēbāt illīc, tanquam scriberet,	<i>He was sitting yonder, as if he had been writing.</i>
Sēdēbāmūs hīc, tanquam scribe- remus,	<i>We were sitting here, as if we had been writing.</i>
Sēdēbātis istīc, tanquam scribe- retis,	<i>You were sitting there, as if you had been writing.</i>
Sēdēbant illīc, tanquam scribe- rent,	<i>They were sitting yonder, as if they had been writing.</i>

607 ——— translated by *might* ——— (object):

Pinnā dāta est, quā* scriberem,	<i>The pen was given me that I might† write with it.*</i>
---------------------------------	---

* Literally, *with which*.

† Or rather, *to write with*.

Pinna data est, qua scriberes,	<i>The pen was given you that you might write with it.</i>
Pinna data est, qua scriberet,	<i>The pen was given him that he might write with it.</i>
Pinna data est, qua scriberemus,	<i>The pen was given us that we might write with it.</i>
Pinna data est, qua scriberetis,	<i>The pen was given you that you might write with it.</i>
Pinna data est, qua scriberent,	<i>The pen was given them that they might write with it.</i>

—— translated by *must* or *should* —— (command): 608

Lex erāt ut scriberem,	<i>There was a law that I must write.</i>
Lex erat ut scriberes,	<i>There was a law that you must write.</i>
Lex erat ut scriberet,	<i>There was a law that he must write.</i>
Lex erat ut scriberemus,	<i>There was a law that we must write.</i>
Lex erat ut scriberetis,	<i>There was a law that you must write.</i>
Lex erat ut scriberent,	<i>There was a law that they must write.</i>

—— translated by *to* —— (indirect interrogative): 609

Nesciēbam quid scriberem,	<i>I knew not what to write.</i>
Nesciebas quid scriberes,	<i>You knew not what to write.</i>
Nesciebat quid scriberet,	<i>He knew not what to write.</i>
Nesciebamus quid scriberemus,	<i>We knew not what to write.</i>
Nesciebatis quid scriberetis,	<i>You knew not what to write.</i>
Nesciebant quid scriberent,	<i>They knew not what to write.</i>

—— translated by *should* or *would*: 610

Puer timēbat nē scriberem,	<i>The boy was afraid I should write.</i>
Puer timebat ne scriberes,	<i>The boy was afraid you would write.</i>
Puer timebat ne scriberet,	<i>The boy was afraid he would write.</i>
Puer timebat ne scriberemus,	<i>The boy was afraid we should write.</i>
Puer timebat ne scriberetis,	<i>The boy was afraid you would write.</i>
Puer timebat ne scriberent,	<i>The boy was afraid they would write.</i>

—— translated by *from* ——ing: 611

Hōc impēdiēbat nē scriberem,	<i>This prevented me from writing.</i>
Hoc impediēbat ne scriberes,	<i>This prevented you from writing.</i>
Hoc impediēbat ne scriberet,	<i>This prevented him from writing.</i>

Hoc impediēbat ne scriberemus, *This prevented us from writing.*
 Hoc impediēbat ne scriberetis, *This prevented you from writing.*
 Hoc impediēbat ne scriberent, *This prevented them from writing.*

612 ——— translated as a past order :*

Nē scriberem, (*He bade*) *me not write.*
 Ne scriberes, (*He bade*) *you not write.*
 Ne scriberet, (*He bade*) *him not write.*
 Ne scriberemus, (*He bade*) *us not write.*
 Ne scriberetis, (*He bade*) *you not write.*
 Ne scriberent, (*He bade*) *them not write.*

613 *Present-Perfect, scripsērī- (indirect interrogative).*

As a present-perfect, *have* —en :

Nescio quid scripsērīm, *I know not what I have written.*
 Nescis quid scripsērīs, *You know not what you have written.*
 Nescit quid scripsērīt, *He knows not what he has written.*
 Nescimus quid scripsērīmūs, *We know not what we have written.*
 Nescitis quid scripsērītīs, *You know not what you have written.*
 Nesciunt quid scripsērīnt, *They know not what they have written.*

614 ——— as an aorist :

Nescio quid hērī scripserim, *I know not what I wrote yesterday.*
 Nescis quid heri scripseris, *You know not what you wrote yesterday.*
 Nescit quid heri scripserit, *He knows not what he wrote yesterday.*
 Nescimus quid heri scripseri- *We know not what we wrote yesterday.*
 mus,
 Nescitis quid heri scripseri- *You know not what you wrote yester-*
 tis, *day.*
 Nesciunt quid heri scripse- *They know not what they wrote yester-*
 rint, *day.*

615 ——— translated by *may have* —en :

Forsitan nīmium scripserim, *Perhaps I may have written too much.*
 Forsitan nīmium scripseris, *Perhaps you may have written too much.*
 Forsitan nīmium scripserit, *Perhaps he may have written too much.*

* In the 'oratio obliqua.'

Forsitan nimium scripserimus,	<i>Perhaps we may have written too much.</i>	[much.
Forsitan nimium scripseritis,	<i>Perhaps you may have written too</i>	
Forsitan nimium scripserint,	<i>Perhaps they may have written too much.</i>	

—— used as a future-perfect after a present, translated by 616
an English present (reported speech) :

Caesar pollicetur sē, si scripserim,	<i>Cæsar promises that if I write, he</i>
rescripturum,	<i>will write again.</i>
Caesar pollicetur se, si scripseris,	<i>Cæsar promises that if you write,</i>
rescripturum,	<i>he will write again.</i>
Caesar pollicetur se, si scripserit,	<i>Cæsar promises that if he writes,</i>
rescripturum,	<i>he (Cæsar) will write again.</i>
Caesar pollicetur se, si scripserimus,	<i>Cæsar promises that if we write,</i>
rescripturum,	<i>he will write again.</i>
Caesar pollicetur se, si scripseritis,	<i>Cæsar promises that if you write,</i>
rescripturum,	<i>he will write again.</i>
Caesar pollicetur se, si scripserint,	<i>Cæsar promises that if they write,</i>
rescripturum,	<i>he will write again.</i>

—— translated by *were to* —— (hypothesis) : 617

Si* scripserim ad eum, redeat,	<i>If I were to write to him, he would</i>
	<i>return.</i> [would return.
Si scripseris ad eum, redeat,	<i>If you were to write to him, he</i>
Si scripserit ad eum, redeat,	<i>If he were to write to him, he</i>
	<i>would return.</i>
Si scripserimus ad eum, redeat,	<i>If we were to write to him, he</i>
	<i>would return.</i>
Si scripseritis ad eum, redeat,	<i>If you were to write to him, he</i>
	<i>would return.</i>
Si scripserint ad eum, redeat,	<i>If they were to write to him, he</i>
	<i>would return.</i>

—— translated by *should, would* (consequence of hypothesis) : 618

Frustrā scripserim,	<i>I should write in vain.</i>
Frustrā scripseris,	<i>You would write in vain.</i>
Frustrā scripserit,	<i>He would write in vain.</i>

* This si might be omitted. Thus in the English too we might drop the *if*, and say, *were I to write to him, &c.* † Or, *if I wrote, &c.*

Frustra scripserimus,	<i>We should write in vain.</i>
Frustra scripseritis,	<i>You would write in vain.</i>
Frustra scripserint,	<i>They would write in vain.</i>

619 ——— translated by *had* —en :

Sċdeo hċc, tanquam ċpistolam perscripserim,*	<i>I sit here, as if I had written the whole letter.</i>
Sċdċs istċc, tanquam epistolam perscripseris,	<i>You sit there, as if you had written the whole letter.</i>
Sċdċt ilċc, tanquam epistolam perscripserit,	<i>He sits yonder, as if he had written the whole letter.</i>
Sċdċmċs hċc, tanquam epistolam perscripserimus,	<i>We sit here, as if we had written the whole letter.</i>
Sċdċtis istċc, tanquam epistolam perscripseritis,	<i>You sit there, as if you had written the whole letter.</i>
Sċdent ilċc, tanquam epistolam perscripserint,	<i>They sit yonder, as if they had written the whole letter.</i>

620 ——— translated as the imperative mood :

Id nunquam scripserim,	<i>Let me never write that.</i>
Id nunquam scripseris,	<i>Never write that.</i>
Id nunquam scripserit,	<i>Let him never write that.</i>
Id nunquam scripserimus,	<i>Let us never write that.</i>
Id nunquam scripseritis,	<i>Never write that.</i>
Id nunquam scripserint,	<i>Let them never write that.</i>

621

Past-Perfect, scripsissċ-

As a past-perfect, *had* —en (indirect interrogative) :

Quaesitum est, ũtrum scripsissem,	<i>The question was asked, whether I had written.</i>
Quaesitum est, utrum scripsissċs,	<i>The question was asked, whether you had written.</i>
Quaesitum est, utrum scripsissċt,	<i>The question was asked, whether he had written.</i>
Quaesitum est, utrum scripsissċmċs,	<i>The question was asked, whether we had written.</i>

* *Per-scrib-* literally signifies *write through, write to the end.*

Quaesitum est, utrum scripsissētis, *The question was asked, whether you had written.*

Quaesitum est, utrum scripsissent, *The question was asked, whether they had written.*

—— as a future-perfect after a past, translated by an English 622
past (reported speech) :

Caesar pollicēbatūr sē, si scripsissem, rescriptūrum, *Cæsar promised that if I wrote, he would write again.*

Caesar pollicebatur se, si scripsisses, rescripturum, *Cæsar promised that if you wrote, he would write again.*

Caesar pollicebatur se, si scripsisset, rescripturum, *Cæsar promised that if he wrote, he (Cæsar) would write again.*

Caesar pollicebatur se, si scripsissemus, rescripturum, *Cæsar promised that if we wrote, he would write again.*

Caesar pollicebatur se, si scripsissetis, rescripturum, *Cæsar promised that if you wrote, he would write again.*

Caesar pollicebatur se, si scripsissent, rescripturum, *Cæsar promised that if they wrote, he would write again.*

—— translated by *had* —— *en* :

623

Etiamsi scripsissem, frustra essēt, *Even if I had written, it would have been in vain.*

Etiamsi scripsisses, frustra esset, *Even if you had written, it would have been in vain.*

Etiamsi scripsisset, frustra esset, *Even if he had written, it would have been in vain.*

Etiamsi scripsissemus, frustra esset, *Even if we had written, it would have been in vain.*

Etiamsi scripsissetis, frustra esset, *Even if you had written, it would have been in vain.*

Etiamsi scripsissent, frustra esset, *Even if they had written, it would have been in vain.*

—— *should have, would have* (consequence of hypothesis) : 624

Tum* quōquē scripsissem, *Even in that case* I should have written.*

Tum quoque scripsisses, *Even in that case you would have written.*

Tum quoque scripsisset, *Even in that case he would have written.*

• Literally *then*.

—— translated as an intention not fulfilled :

633

Hābēbam ei grātiās, scriptūrūs* *I felt grateful to him, and should*
quōquē, nīsi aegrōtārem, *have written too, if I had not*
been ill.

GERUND, scribendo-.

634

Translated by —ing :

N. Mīhi est scribendum ēpistō- *To me belongs the writing the*
lās, *letters.*

Ac. Dēligītūr ād scribendum ēpi- *He is selected for writing the let-*
stolas, *ters.*

G. Vēni epistolas scribendī causā, *I came for the sake of writing*
the letters.

D. Aptūs est scribendō epistolas, *He is fit for writing letters.*

Ab. Scribendo epistolas occūpātūs *He is engaged in writing letters.*
est,

SUPINE, scriptu-.

635

Translated as an English infinitive :

Ac. Eo illūc scriptum, *I am going yonder to write.*

Ab. Sēricae littērae diffīcīlēs sunt *The Chinese letters are difficult to*
scriptū, *write.*

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTIVE VERB, WITH THE 636 ENGLISH TRANSLATION.

Arma- (r.), *arm oneself.*

Principal parts: armārī, armāto-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

637

Present Tense, am arming myself, arm myself, &c.

Armōr,	<i>I am arming myself.</i>
Armāris or armārē,	<i>You are arming yourself.</i>
Armātūr,	<i>He is arming himself.</i>
Armāmūr,	<i>We are arming ourselves.</i>
Armāmīni,	<i>You are arming yourselves.</i>
Armantūr,	<i>They are arming themselves.</i>

* See the conjugation of the verb *fu-* with the participle in *tūro-*.

638 *Past-Imperfect, was arming myself, &c.*

Armābār,	<i>I was arming myself.</i>
Armābārīs or armābārē,	<i>You were arming yourself.</i>
Armābātūr,	<i>He was arming himself.</i>
Armābāmūr,	<i>We were arming ourselves.</i>
Armābāmīni,	<i>You were arming yourselves.</i>
Armābantūr,	<i>They were arming themselves.</i>

639 *Future, shall or will arm myself, &c.*

Armābōr,	<i>I shall arm myself.</i>
Armābērīs or armābērē,	<i>You will arm yourself.</i>
Armābītūr,	<i>He will arm himself.</i>
Armābīmūr,	<i>We shall arm ourselves.</i>
Armābīmīni,	<i>You will arm yourselves.</i>
Armābuntūr,	<i>They will arm themselves.</i>

640 *Present-Perfect, have armed myself, &c. (or Aorist, armed myself.)*

Armātūs* sum,	<i>I have armed myself.</i>
Armatus ēs,	<i>You have armed yourself.</i>
Armatus est,	<i>He has armed himself.</i>
Armati† sūmūs,	<i>We have armed ourselves.</i>
Armati estīs,	<i>You have armed yourselves.</i>
Armati sunt,	<i>They have armed themselves.</i>

641 *Past-Perfect, had armed myself, &c.*

Armatus ēram,‡	<i>I had armed myself.</i>
Armatus ērās,	<i>You had armed yourself.</i>
Armatus ērāt,	<i>He had armed himself.</i>
Armati ērāmūs,	<i>We had armed ourselves.</i>
Armati ērātīs,	<i>You had armed yourselves.</i>
Armati ērant,	<i>They had armed themselves.</i>

642 *Future-Perfect, shall have armed myself, &c.*

Armatus ēro,§	<i>I shall have armed myself.</i>
Armatus ēris,	<i>You will have armed yourself.</i>
Armatus ērit,	<i>He will have armed himself.</i>

* *Armātū* if the nominative be feminine, *armātum* if it be neuter.

† *Armātæ* if the nominative be feminine, *armātā* if it be neuter.

‡ Or *fuēram*, &c.

§ Or *fuēro*, &c.

Armati �rim�s,	<i>We shall have armed ourselves.</i>
Armati �rit�s,	<i>You will have armed yourselves.</i>
Armati �runt,	<i>They will have armed themselves.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

643

Present.

Arm�r�, <i>Arm yourself.</i>		Arm�m�n�, <i>Arm yourselves.</i>
------------------------------	--	----------------------------------

Future.

644

Arm�t�r,	<i>You must then arm yourself.</i>
Arm�t�r,	<i>He must then arm himself.</i>
Arm�nt�r,	<i>They must then arm themselves.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

645

Present. (See the several translations of *scriba-m.*)

Cons�l imp�r�t �t arm�r,	<i>The consul commands me to arm myself.</i>
Consul imperat ut arm�r�s or arm�r�,	<i>The consul commands you to arm yourself.</i>
Consul imperat ut arm�t�r,	<i>The consul commands him to arm himself.</i>
Consul imperat ut arm�m�r,	<i>The consul commands us to arm our- selves.</i>
Consul imperat ut arm�m�n�,	<i>The consul commands you to arm your- selves.</i>
Consul imperat ut arment�r,	<i>The consul commands them to arm themselves.</i>

Past. (See the several translations of *scribere-m.*)

646

Cons�l imp�r�vit ut arm�r�r,	<i>The consul commanded me to arm myself.</i>
Consul imperavit ut arm�r�r�s or arm�r�r�,	<i>The consul commanded you to arm yourself.</i>
Consul imperavit ut arm�r�t�r,	<i>The consul commanded him to arm himself.</i>
Consul imperavit ut arm�r�m�r,	<i>The consul commanded us to arm ourselves.</i>
Consul imperavit ut arm�r�m�n�,	<i>The consul commanded you to arm yourselves.</i>
Consul imperavit ut arm�rent�r,	<i>The consul commanded them to arm themselves.</i>

647 *Present-Perfect.* (See the several translations of *scripseri-m.*)

Nescio quāre armatus sim,	<i>I know not why I have armed myself.</i>
Nescio quare armatus sis,	<i>I know not why you have armed yourself.</i>
Nescio quare armatus sit,	<i>I know not why he has armed himself.</i>
Nescio quare armati simūs,	<i>I know not why we have armed ourselves.</i>
Nescio quare armati sitis,	<i>I know not why you have armed yourselves.</i>
Nescio quare armati sint,	<i>I know not why they have armed them-</i>

648 *Past-Perfect.* (See the several translations of *scripsisse-m.*)

Nesciebam quare armatus essem,	<i>I knew not why I had armed myself.</i>
Nesciebam quare armatus essēs,	<i>I knew not why you had armed yourself.</i>
Nesciebam quare armatus essēt,	<i>I knew not why he had armed himself.</i>
Nesciebam quare armati essemus,	<i>I knew not why we had armed ourselves.</i>
Nesciebam quare armati essētis,	<i>I knew not why you had armed yourselves.</i>
Nesciebam quare armati essent,	<i>I knew not why they had armed themselves.</i>

649

INFINITIVE IMPERFECT.

Dēbeo armārī,	<i>I ought to arm myself.</i>
Scio eum armari,	<i>I know that he is arming himself.</i>
Sciēbam eum armari,	<i>I knew that he was arming himself.</i>
Armari signum belli est,	<i>To arm oneself is a sign of war.</i>
Dēbēbam armari,	<i>I ought to have armed myself.</i>

650

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

Scio eum armātum essē,	<i>I know that he has armed himself.</i>
Sciebam eum armatum esse,	<i>I knew that he had armed himself.</i>

651

PARTICIPLE IMPERFECT.

N. armanti- or armant-, (While) arming myself.*

PARTICIPLE PERFECT.

652 N. masc. armāto-, Having armed myself.*

* Or *thyself, himself*, &c., as the case may be.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

653

N. masc. armātūro-, *About to arm myself.*

GERUND.

654

N. armando-, *Arming oneself.*CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB, WITH THE
ENGLISH TRANSLATION. 655Prēm-, *press.**Principal parts : prēmi, presso-.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*Prēmōr, * *I am pressed.*Prēmimūr, *we are pressed.*Prēmēris, *you are pressed.*Prēmimīni, *you are pressed.*Prēmītūr, *he is pressed.*Prēmuntūr, *they are pressed.**Past.*

656

Prēmēbār, † *I was pressed.*Prēmēbāmūr, *we were pressed.*Prēmēbāris, *you were pressed.*Prēmēbāmīni, *you were pressed.*Prēmēbātūr, *he was pressed.*Prēmēbantūr, *they were pressed.**Future.*

657

Prēmār, *I shall be pressed.*Prēmēmūr, *we shall be pressed.*Prēmēris, *you will be pressed.*Prēmēmīni, *you will be pressed.*Prēmētūr, *he will be pressed.*Prēmētūr, *they will be pressed.*

* With many verbs this translation would not give the meaning, and indeed the English passive is defective in the imperfect tenses. Thus *dōmūs aedificātūr* means, not 'the house is built,' for that would imply that the building is completed, but 'the house is being built' or 'is a-building:' but of these two phrases, the first is scarcely English, and the second is obsolete. Again, such a verb as *occidōr* must not be translated 'I am killed,' but rather, 'I am on the point of being killed.'

† Similarly, *domūs aedificabatur* would signify 'the house was being built' or 'was a-building.' So *occidēbar* must not be translated 'I was killed,' but rather 'I was on the point of being killed.'

658

Present-Perfect.

Pressūs*sum,† *I have been pressed*. Pressī sūmūs, *we have been pressed*.
 Pressus ēs, *you have been pressed*. Pressi estīs, *you have been pressed*.
 Pressus est, *he has been pressed*. Pressi sunt, *they have been pressed*.

659

Past-Perfect.

Pressūs*ēram,§ *I had been pressed*. Pressī ērāmūs, *we had been pressed*.
 Pressus ērās, *you had been pressed*. Pressi ērātīs, *you had been pressed*.
 Pressus ērāt, *he had been pressed*. Pressi ērant, *they had been pressed*.

660

Future-Perfect.

Pressūs*ēro¶, *I shall have been pressed*. Pressī ērīmūs, *we shall have been pressed*.
 Pressus ērīs, *you will have been pressed*. Pressi ērītīs, *you will have been pressed*.
 Pressus ērīt, *he will have been pressed*. Pressi ērunt, *they will have been pressed*.

661

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Prēmērē, *be thou pressed*. Prēmīmīni, *be ye pressed*.

662

Future.

Prēmītōr, *thou shalt be pressed*. Prēmuntōr, *they shall be pressed*.
 Prēmītōr, *he shall be pressed*.

663

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

am —ed (result).

Rēs eō rēdiit, ut mālīs prēmār, *Matters are come to this, that I am pressed with troubles*.

Res eo rediit, ut malis prēmārīs or prēmārē, *Matters are come to this, that you are pressed with troubles, &c.*

* i. e. *Pressūs*, -ā or -um, according to the gender of the nominative.

† Or as an aorist, *I was pressed*, &c. Also *pressūs fui*, &c.

‡ With some verbs the translation *is —ed* is admissible. Thus *dōmūs aedificātā est* means 'the house is built' or 'the building is now completed.' *Occīsus sum*, 'I am killed.'

§ Or *fueram*, &c.

¶ With some verbs this tense may be translated *was —ed*. Thus, *domus jam aedificata ērāt*, 'the house was now built,' i. e. the building was completed.

¶ Or *fuēro*, &c.

were — ed (hypothesis).

664

Egō si tot mālīs prēmār, pēream, *If I were pressed by so many troubles, I should die.*

Tu si tot malis prēmāris, pērēās, *If you were pressed by so many troubles, you would die, &c.*

should, would be — ed (consequence of hypothesis).

665

Tum nīmium prēmār, *In that case I should be too much pressed.*

Tum nimium prēmāris, *In that case you would be too much pressed, &c.*

shall, will be — ed.

666

Tīmōr est nē prēmār, *The fear is that I shall be pressed.*

Timor est ne prēmāris, *The fear is that you will be pressed, &c.*

being — ed.

667

Stāt per Caium, quōmīnus prēmār, *Caius prevents me from being pressed.*

Stat per Caium, quominus prēmāris, *Caius prevents you from being pressed, &c.*

to be — ed (object).

668

Nītor nē prēmār, *I am striving not to be pressed.*

Nītēris ne prēmāris, *You are striving not to be pressed, &c.*

Past Tense.

669

should be — ed.

Tīmōr ērāt nē prēmērēr, *There was a fear that I should be pressed.*

Timor erat ne prēmērēris, *There was a fear that you would be pressed, &c.*

was — ed (result).

670

Rēs eō rēdiērāt, ut mālīs prēmērēr, *Matters had come to this, that I was pressed with troubles.*

Res eo redierat, ut malis prēmērēris or prēmērērē, *Matters were come to this, that you were pressed with troubles, &c.*

had been — ed (hypothesis).

671

Egō si tot mālīs prēmērer, pērīrem, *If I had been pressed with so many troubles, I should have died.*

Tu si tot malis premereris, pērīrēs, *If you had been pressed by so many troubles, you would have died, &c.*

- 672 *should, would have been* —ed (consequence of hypothesis).

Tum nimum přeměrĕr, *In that case I should have been too much pressed.*

Tum nimum premereris, *In that case you would have been too much pressed, &c.*

- 673 *being* —ed.

Stetit per Caium, ne premerer, *Caius prevented me from being pressed.*

Stetit per Caium, ne premereris, *Caius prevented you from being pressed, &c.*

- 674 *to be* —ed (object).

Nitšbar ne premerer, *I was striving not to be pressed.*

Nitšbārĭs ne premereris, *You were striving not to be pressed, &c.*

- 675 *Present-Perfect.*

have been —ed (indirect interrogative).

Nescit, quam grāvĭter pressus sim, *He knows not how heavily I have been pressed.*

Nescit, quam graviter pressus sis, *He knows not how heavily you have been pressed, &c.*

- 676 *As an Aorist, was* —ed (indirect interrogative).

Nĕmo scit, quantis tum mālĭs pressus sim, *No one knows with what great troubles I was then pressed.*

Nemo scit, quantis tum malis pressus sis, *No one knows with what great troubles you were then pressed, &c.*

- 677 *were* —ed (hypothesis).

Si pressus sim, cĕdam, *If I were pressed, I should give way.*

Si pressus sis, cĕdās, *If you were pressed, you would give way, &c.*

- 678 *had been* —ed.

Palleo, tanquā Ńb ursō sim pressus, *I look pale, as if I had been pressed by a bear.*

Pallĕs, tanquā ab urso sis pressus, *You look pale, as if you had been pressed by a bear, &c.*

- 679 *should, would be* —ed (consequence of hypothesis).

Nequĭquam pressus sim, *I should be pressed to no purpose.*

Nequĭquam pressus sis, *You would be pressed to no purpose, &c.*

As a Future-perfect, translated by an English present. 680

Scit mē, si mālō pressus sim, tāmēn incōlūmem ēvāsūrum, *He knows that if I am pressed by trouble, still I shall come out unhurt.*

Scit tē, si malo pressus sis, tamen incolumem evasurum, *He knows that if you are pressed by trouble, still you will come out unhurt, &c.*

Past-perf. 681

had been —ed (indirect interrogative).

Nesciēbat quam grāviter pressus essem, *He knew not how heavily I had been pressed.*

Nesciebat quam graviter pressus essēs, *He knew not how heavily you had been pressed, &c.*

should, would have been —ed (consequence of hypothesis). 682

Nēquiquam pressus essem, *I should have been pressed to no purpose.*

Nēquiquam pressus esses, *You would have been pressed to no purpose, &c.*

As a Future-perf., translated by *were* —ed. 683

Sciēbat mē, si mālō pressus essem, tāmēn nunquam cessūrum, *He knew that if I were pressed by trouble, still I should never yield.*

Sciēbat tē, si malo pressus esses, tamen nunquam cessurum, *He knew that if you were pressed by trouble, still you would never yield, &c.*

INFINITIVE IMPERFECT. Prēmī, *to be pressed.* 684

INFINITIVE PERFECT. Presso-esse, *to have been pressed.*

PARTICIPLE IMPERFECT. Prēmendo-, *being pressed or to be pressed.*

PARTICIPLE PERFECT. Presso-, *pressed.*

CONJUGATION OF A DEPONENT VERB. 685

c.f. Sēqu-, *follow.*

Principal parts: sēqui-, sēcūto-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sēquōr, *I follow.*

Sēquimur, *we follow.*

Sēquēris, *you follow.*

Sēquimini, *you follow.*

Sēquitur, *he follows.*

Sēquuntur,* *they follow.*

* The forms *sēquentur* and *sēcuntur* also occur.

687

Past-imperf.

Sēquēbār, <i>I was following.</i>	Sēquēbāmūr, <i>we were following.</i>
Sēquēbāris, <i>you were following.</i>	Sēquēbāmīni, <i>you were following.</i>
Sēquēbātūr, <i>he was following.</i>	Sēquēbantūr, <i>they were following.</i>

688

Future.

Sēquār, <i>I shall follow.</i>	Sēquēmūr, <i>we shall follow.</i>
Sēquēris or sēquērē, <i>you will follow.</i>	Sēquēmīni, <i>you will follow.</i>
Sēquētūr, <i>he will follow.</i>	Sēquentūr, <i>they will follow.</i>

689

Pres.-perf.

Sēcūtūs* sum, <i>I have followed.</i> †	Sēcūtī‡ sūmūs, <i>we have followed.</i>
Secutus es, <i>you have followed.</i>	Secuti estis, <i>you have followed.</i>
Secutus est, <i>he has followed.</i>	Secuti sunt, <i>they have followed.</i>

690

Past-perf.

Secutus* ēram,§ <i>I had followed.</i>	Secuti‡ ērāmūs, <i>we had followed.</i>
Secutus ērās, <i>you had followed.</i>	Secuti ērātīs, <i>you had followed.</i>
Secutus ērāt, <i>he had followed.</i>	Secuti ērant, <i>they had followed.</i>

691

Fut.-perf.

Secutus* ēro, <i>I shall have followed.</i>	Secuti‡ ērimūs, <i>we shall have followed.</i>
Secutus ēris, <i>you will have followed.</i>	Secuti ēritīs, <i>you will have followed.</i>
Secutus ērit, <i>he will have followed.</i>	Secuti ērunt, <i>they will have followed.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

692

Sēquērē, <i>follow.</i>	Sēquīmīni, <i>follow.</i>
-------------------------	---------------------------

Future.

693

Sēquitōr, <i>thou shalt follow.</i>	Sēquuntor, <i>they shall follow.</i>
Sēquitōr, <i>he shall follow.</i>	

* *Secutūs*, —ā, —um, according to the gender of the nominative.

† Or as an aorist, *I followed*, &c. Also *secutus fui*, &c.

‡ *Secuti*, —ae, —ā, according to the gender of the nominative.

§ Or *fuera*m, &c.

|| Or *fuero*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

694

Present. Sēquār, sēquāris or sēquārē, sēquātūr; sēquāminī, sēquantūr.

Past. Sēquērēr, sēquērēris or sēquērērē, sēquērētūr; sēquērē- 695
mūr, sēquērēmīnī, sēquērentūr.

Pres.-perf. Sēcūtūs sim,† secutus sis, secutus sit; secuti simūs, 696
secuti sitis, secuti sint.

Past-perf. Secutus essem,‡ secutus essēs, secutus essēt; secuti 697
essēmūs, secuti essētis, secuti essent.

INFINITIVE. Sēqui, *to follow.*

INFINITIVE PERFECT. Sēcūto-essē, *to have followed.*

PARTICIPLE IMPERFECT. Sēquenti- or sēquent-, *following.*

PARTICIPLE and GERUND. Sēquendo-, *following.*

PARTICIPLE PERFECT. Sēcūto-, *having followed.*

Conjugation, in part, of an Impersonal verb.

698

C.F. Plu-, *rain.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Pluit, *it rains.*

Past. Pluēbāt, *it was raining.*

Future. Pluēt, *it will rain.*

Pres.-perf. Plūvit, *it has rained, or*

As an aorist. Plūvīt, *it rained.*

Past-perf. Plūvērāt, *it had rained.*

Fut.-perf. Plūvērīt, *it will have rained, &c. &c.*

Conjugation, in part, of an Impersonal verb of the feelings. 700
(See § 393.)

C.F. Pūde-, *shame.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Pūdet mē ignāviae, *I am ashamed of my cowardice.*

Pudet tē ignāviae, *You are ashamed of your cowardice.*

Pudet eum ignāviae, *He is ashamed of his cowardice.*

* For the English translation, see the mode of translating *scriba-m*, &c. §§ 594-624; and observe that deponent verbs are translated by English active verbs.

† Or *fuierim*, &c.

‡ Or *fuissem*, &c.

Pudet nōs ignaviae,	<i>We are ashamed of our cowardice.</i>
Pudet vōs ignaviae,	<i>You are ashamed of your cowardice.</i>
Pudet eōs ignaviae,	<i>They are ashamed of their cowardice.</i>

Past.

Pudebat me ignaviae,	<i>I was ashamed of my cowardice.</i>
Pudebat te ignaviae,	<i>You were ashamed of your cowardice, &c.</i>

Future.

Pudēbit me ignaviae,	<i>I shall be ashamed of my cowardice.</i>
Pudebit te ignaviae,	<i>You will be ashamed of your cowardice, &c.</i>

701 Conjugation, in part, of a Passive Impersonal verb.

C.F. Rēsist-, *stand against, make opposition, oppose.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Rēsistitur mīhi,	<i>Opposition is made to me, or I am opposed.</i>
Resistitur tibi,	<i>Opposition is made to you, or you are opposed.</i>
Resistitur ei,	<i>Opposition is made to him, or he is opposed.</i>
Resistitur nōbīs,	<i>Opposition is made to us, or we are opposed.</i>
Resistitur vōbīs,	<i>Opposition is made to you, or you are opposed.</i>
Resistitur eīs,	<i>Opposition is made to them, or they are opposed.</i>

Past-imperf. Rēsistebātūr mihi, *Opposition was made to me, or I was opposed.**Resistebatur tibi, *Opposition was made to you, or you were opposed, &c.**Future.* Rēsistētūr mihi, *Opposition will be made to me, or I shall be opposed.*Resistetur tibi, *Opposition will be made to you, or you will be opposed, &c.**Pres.-perf.* Restitum mihi est, *Opposition has been made to me, or I have been opposed.†*Restitum tibi est, *Opposition has been made to you, or you have been opposed, &c.** i. e. *all this time* or *for a time.* This tense must not be confounded with the aorist.† Or as an aorist, *Opposition was made to me, &c.*

Past-perf. Restitum mihi erat, *Opposition had been made to me, or I had been opposed.*

Restitum tibi erat, *Opposition had been made to you, or you had been opposed, &c.*

Conjugation, in part, of the participle in *tūro-*, with the verbs 702 *ēs-* and *fu-*, in the sense of intention or destiny.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Nihil actūrus sum, *I intend to do nothing.*

Nihil acturus ēs, *You intend to do nothing, &c.*

Quid timeam, si beātus futūrus sum? *What am I to fear, if I am destined to be happy?*

Quid timeās, si beatus futurus ēs? *What are you to fear, if you are destined to be happy? &c.*

Nihil acturus eram, *I intended to do nothing.*

Nihil acturus erās, *You intended to do nothing, &c.*

Quid timērem, si beatus futurus eram? *What was I to fear, if I was destined to be happy?*

Quid timērēs, si beatus futurus eras? *What were you to fear, if you were destined to be happy? &c.*

Demonstrābo, quae dictūrūs ēro, magnā essē, *I will point out that what I am going to say is important.*

Demonstrabis, quae dicturus ēris, magna esse, *You will point out that what you are going to say is important, &c.*

Nisi rēvertissem, intērītūrus fuī, *If I had not turned back, I should have perished.*

Nisi revertissēs, interiturus fuistī, *If you had not turned back, you would have perished, &c.*

Quam vim latro mihi fuerat illaturus, in ipsum convertī, *The violence which the robber had intended to direct against me, I turned against himself.*

Quam vim latro tibi fuerat illaturus, in ipsum convertisti, *The violence which the robber had intended to direct against you, you turned against himself, &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

707

Scribam quid actūrus sim, *I will write word what I intend to do.*

Scribēs quid acturus sis, *You will write word what you intend to do, &c.*

Nescio quādo sim moritūrus, *I know not when I am to die.*

Nescīs quādo sis moriturus, *You know not when you are to die, &c.*

Scipsi quid acturus essem, *I wrote word what I intended to do.*

Scipsisti quid acturus essēs, *You wrote word what you intended to do, &c.*

Nesciebam quādo essem moritūrus, *I knew not when I was to die.*

Nesciebās quādo essēs moriturus, *You knew not when you were to die, &c.*

Sēquitur ut nīsi rēvertissem, intērītūrus fuērim, *It follows that if I had not turned back, I should have perished.*

Sequitur ut nisi revertissēs, interitūrus fuerīs, *It follows that if you had not turned back, you would have perished, &c.*

710

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Scio* eum nīhīl acturum essē, *I know* that he intends* to do nothing, or that he will do nothing.*

Scio omnēs hōmīnēs moritūrōs essē, *I know that all men are destined to die, or will die.*

Certum est mē nīsi rēvertissem, intērītūrum fuissē, *It is certain that if I had not turned back, I should have perished.*

712 Conjugation of the participle in *endo-*, with the verb *ēs-* and *fu-*, in the sense of duty or necessity.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Mīhi omniā ūnō tempōrē sunt āgendā, *I have every thing to do at once.*

Mīhi omnia uno tempore ērant agenda, *I had every thing to do at once.*

Mīhi omnia uno tempore ērunt agenda, *I shall have every thing to do at once.*

Nisi firmāta extrēma agmīnis fuissent, ingens clādēs accīpiendā fuit, *If the rear of the line of march had not been secured, a tremendous blow must have been received.*

* After a past tense, as *sciebam*, 'I knew,' the infinitive would be translated by 'intended' or 'were destined.' (See next example.)

Ab Alexamēnō fuit hābenda ōrātiō, *The speech was to have been made by Alexamenus, (but as he is now dead), &c.*

Ab Alexameno fuērāt habenda oratio, *The speech was to have been made by Alexamenus, (but as he was then dead), &c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

717

Nescio quid sit nōbīs āgendum, *I know not what we ought to do.*

Nesciēbam quid esset nobis agendum, *I knew not what we ought to do.*

Hoc haud dūbium fēcit, quīn nīsi firmāta extrēma agmīnis fuissent, ingens clādēs accipiendā fuērīt, *This made it certain, that if the rear of the line of march had not been secured, a tremendous blow must have been received.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

720

Sentit diffērendum esse in aestātem bellum, *He feels that the war must be put off to the summer.*

Hoc scio, nīsi rēvertissēt, in illo ei conclāvi cūbandum fuissē, *This I know, that if he had not turned back, he would have had to sleep in that chamber.*

SOME IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS

722

CONJUGATED.

Es-, be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.		Past.		Future.	
S. sum	<i>I am</i>	S. ēram	<i>I was</i>	S. ērō	<i>I shall be</i>
ēs	<i>you are</i>	ērās	<i>you were</i>	ērīs	<i>you will be</i>
est	<i>he is</i>	ērāt	<i>he was</i>	ērīt	<i>he will be</i>
P. sūmūs	<i>we are</i>	P. ērāmūs	<i>we were</i>	P. ērimūs	<i>we shall be</i>
estīs	<i>you are</i>	ērātīs	<i>you were</i>	ērītīs	<i>you will be</i>
sunt	<i>they are</i>	ērant	<i>they were</i>	ērunt	<i>they will be.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Present. S. Es. P. Estē.

Future. S. Estō, estō. P. Estōtē, suntō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. S. Sim, sis, sit. P. Simūs, sitīs, sint.

Past. S. Essem, essēs, essēt. P. Essēmūs, essētis, essent.

INFINITIVE. Essē.

- 723 There is no participle of the simple verb, but the compounds with *prae* and *ab* have *præsenti*-, *absenti*-, formed from *prae-es-enti*-, *ab-es-enti*-.

- 724 Those parts of this verb which begin with *es* are also used in the sense of 'eat;' at any rate the following occur:

INDICAT. Pres. Est. IMPERATIVE. Pres. ēs, estē. Fut. Estā. SUBJ. Essem, essēs, &c. INFIN. Essē. SUPINES, ēsum and ēsu-. PART. ēsūro-. Also in the passive estūr, and the perfect part. ēso-.

- 725 *Fu-, be.*

The imperfect tenses of this verb in the Indicative are obsolete.

INDICATIVE. Pres.-perf. Have been or was. S. Fuī, fuisti, fuit. P. fuimūs, fuistis, fuerunt or fuērē.

Past-perf. Had been. S. Fuēram, fuērās, fuērāt. P. Fuērāmūs, fuērātis, fuērant.

Fut.-perf. Shall have been. S. Fuērō, fuēris, fuērīt. P. fuērīmus, fuērītis, fuērint.

IMPERATIVE not in use.

SUBJUNCTIVE. Pres.-imperf. S. Fuam, fuās, fuāt. P. Fuāmūs, fuātis, fuant.*

Past-imperf. S. Fōrem, fōrēs, fōrēt. P. Fōrēmūs, fōrētis, fōrent.

Pres.-perf. S. Fuērim, fuēris, fuērīt. P. Fuērīmūs, fuērītis, fuērint.

Past-perf. S. Fuissem, fuissēs, fuissēt. P. Fuissēmūs, fuissētis, fuissent.

INFINITIVE. Imperf. Fōrē (used as a future, will be). Perf. Fuissē.

PARTICIPLE. Future. Fūtūro-.

- 726 This verb *fu-* supplies the perfect tenses which are wanting in the verb *ēs*-, *be*.

- 727 *Es-* and *fu-* compounded with *prō-* or *prōd-*, *be profitable*.

INDICATIVE. Pres. S. Prōsum, prōdēs, prōdest. P. Prōsūmūs, prōdestis, prōsunt.

* These forms are obsolete.

Past. S. Prödëram, prödërās, &c. *Fut. S.* Prödërō, prödërīs, &c.

Pres.-perf. S. Pröfuī, &c. *Past-perf. S.* Pröfuëram, &c. *Fut.-perf. S.* Pröfuërō, &c.

IMPERATIVE probably not in use.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres. S.* Prösīm, &c. *Past. S.* Prödësse, &c.

Pres.-perf. S. Pröfuërim, &c. *Past-perf. S.* Pröfuisse, &c.

INFINITIVE. *Imperf. S.* Prödëssë. *Perf. S.* Pröfuisse.

PARTICIPLE. *Fut. S.* Pröfütüro-.

Es- or fu-, compounded with the adjective pöt- or pötī-, *be able.* 728

INDICATIVE. *Pres. S.* Possum, pötës, pötëst. *P. S.* Possümüs, pötëstīs, possunt.

Past. S. Pötëram, pötërās, pötërāt. *P. S.* Pötërämüs, pötërātīs, pötërant.

Fut. S. Pötërō, pötërīs, pötërīt. *P. S.* Pötërīmüs, pötërītīs, pötërunt.

Pres.-perf. S. Pötuī, pötuistī, &c. *Past-perf. S.* Pötuëram, &c.

Fut.-perf. S. Pötuërō, pötuërīs, pötuërīt. *P. S.* Pötuërīmüs, pötuërītīs, pötuërint.

IMPERATIVE not in use.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres. S.* Possim, possīs, &c. *Past. S.* Possem, possës, &c.

Pres.-perf. S. Pötuërim, pötuërīs, pötuërīt. *P. S.* Pötuërīmüs, pötuërītīs, pötuërint. *Past-perf. S.* Pötuissem, pötuisse, &c.

INFINITIVE. *Imperf. S.* Possë. *Perf. S.* Pötuisse.

PARTICIPLE. Pötenti- or pötënt-.*

Fër-, *bring* (see § 546).

729

INDICATIVE. *Pres. S.* Fëro, fers, fert. *P. S.* Fërīmüs, fertīs, fërunt.

Past-imp. S. Fërëbam, &c. *Fut. S.* Fëram, &c.

IMPERAT. *Pres. S.* Fër, fertë. *Fut. S.* Fertō, fertō, fertōtë, feruntō.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres. S.* Fëram, &c. *Past. S.* Ferrem, &c.

INFINITIVE. Fërrë. PART. Fërenti- or fërent-. GERUND. Fërendo-.

The passive is regular except in the indic. pres. ferrīs, fertür; the imperative fertör; subj. past-imp. ferrer, &c.

* This is used rather as an adjective than as a participle.

730 Inqu- or inqui-, *say*.

IND. *Pres.* Inquam, inquīs, inquit; inquimus, — inquiunt.
Past-imp. — — inquitbāt; — — inquitbant
Future. — inquitēs, inquitēt.
Aorist. Inquit, inquisti.
 IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* Inquē. *Fut.* Inquitō.

731 Cēd-, *give, tell*, used only in the imperative present.

S. Cēdō, *give (me), tell (me).*
P. Cettē, *give (me), tell (me).*

732 Da-, *put or give*.

INDICATIVE. *Pres.* *S.* Dō, dās, dāt. *P.* Dāmūs, dātis, dant.
Past-imp. Dābam, &c. *Fut.* Dābō, &c. *Pres.-perf.* Dēdī, &c.
Past-perf. Dēdēram, &c. *Fut.-perf.* Dēdērō, &c.
 IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* Dā, dātē. *Fut.* Dātō, dātō, dātōtē, dantō.
 SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres.* *S.* Dem, dēs, dēt. *P.* Dēmūs, dētīs, dent.
Past-imperf. Dārem, &c. *Pres.-perf.* Dēdērim, &c. *Past-perf.* Dēdissem, &c.
 INFINITIVE. *Imperf.* Dārē. *Perf.* Dēdisšē.
 PART. *Imperf.* Danti- or Dant-. *Fut.* Dātūro-. GERUND. Dando-.

733 Vōl- or vēl-, *wish*.

INDICATIVE. *Pres.* *S.* Vōlē, vīs, volt or vult. *P.* Vōlūmūs, voltīs or vultīs, vōlunt.
Past-imp. Vōlēbam, &c. *Fut.* Vōlam, vōlēs, &c. *Pres.-perf.* Vōluī, &c. *Past-perf.* Vōluēram, &c. *Fut.-perf.* Vōluērō, &c.
 IMPERATIVE not in use.
 SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres.* *S.* Vēlim, vēlīs, vēlīt. *P.* Vēlimūs, vēlītīs, vēlint.
Past. Vellem, vellēs, &c.
Pres.-perf. Vōluērim, &c. *Past-perf.* Vōluissem, &c.
 INFINITIVE. *Imperf.* Vellē. *Perf.* Vōluissē.
 PART. *Imperf.* Vōlenti- or Vōlent-. GERUND. Vōlendo-.

734 Nēvōl- or nōl-, *be unwilling*, a compound of *ne* and *vōl-*.

INDICATIVE. *Pres.* *S.* Nōlē, nēvis* or nonvīs, nēvolt* or nonvolt.† *P.* Nōlūmūs, nēvoltīs* or nonvoltītīs, nōlunt.

* The forms with *ne* are found in the older writers.

† Or *nonvult* and *nonvultīs*.

Past-imperf. Nōlēbam, &c. *Fut.* Nōlam, nōlēš, &c. *Pres.-perf.* Nōluī, &c. *Past-perf.* Nōluēram, &c. *Fut.-perf.* Nōluērō, &c.
IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* Nōli, nōlite. *Fut.* Nōlitō, nōlitōtē.
SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres.* Nōlim, nōlis, &c. *Past.* Nollem, &c.
Pres.-perf. Nōluērim, &c. *Past-perf.* Nōluissem, &c.
INFINITIVE. *Imperf.* Nollē. *Perf.* Nōluissē.
PART. *Imperf.* Nōlenti- or nōlent-. *GERUND.* Nōlendo-.

Māvōl- or māl-, *prefer*, a compound of māgē and vōl-. 735

INDICATIVE. *Pres.* S. Māvōlō* or mālō, māvīs, māvolt.† *P.* Mālūms, māvoltīs,† māvōlunt* or mālunt.

Past-imp. Mālēbam, &c. *Fut.* Māvōlam* or mālam, &c. *Pres.-perf.* Māluī, &c. *Past-perf.* Māluēram, &c. *Fut.-perf.* Māluērō, &c.

IMPERATIVE not in use.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres.* Māvēlim* or mālim, mālīs, &c. *Past.* Māvellem* or mallem, &c.

Pres.-perf. Māluērim, &c. *Past-perf.* Māluissem.

INFINITIVE. *Imperf.* Māvellē* or mallē. *Perf.* Māluissē.

Fi-, *become*, used in the imperfect tenses as a passive of fāc- or 736 fāci-, *make* (see § 534).

INDICATIVE. *Pres.* Fīō, fīs, fīt; —, —, fīunt.

Past-imp. Fīebam, &c. *Fut.* Fīam, fīes, &c.

IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* Fī, fītē.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres.* Fīam, &c. *Past.* Fīērem, &c.

INFINITIVE. Fīērī.

I, go.

737

INDICATIVE. *Pres.* Eō, īs, īt; īmūs, ītīs, eunt.

Past-imp. ībam, &c. *Fut.* ībō, ībīs, &c. *Pres.-perf.* īvī or īi, &c. *Past-perf.* īvēram or īēram, &c. *Fut.-perf.* īvērō or īērō, &c.

IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* ī, ītē. *Fut.* ītō, ītō, ītōtē, euntō.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pres.* Eam, eās, &c. *Past.* īrem, &c. *Pres.-perf.* īvērim or īērim, &c. *Past-perf.* īvissem, or īissem or īissem, &c.

INFINITIVE. *Imperf.* īrē. *Perf.* īvisšē, īisšē or īisšē.

PARTICIPLE. *Imperf.* lenti- or ient-. *N.* iens; *A.* euntem; *G.* ēuntīs, &c. *Fut.* ītūro-. *GERUND.* ēundo-.

* The forms māvōlo, &c. are found in the older writers.

† Or māvult and māvultīs.

The passive is used impersonally. INDIC. *Itur, îbătŭr, îbŭtŭr, ȳtum est, &c.* SUBJ. *Eătŭr, îrătŭr, ȳtum aŭt, &c.* INFIN. *îrŭ, ȳtum eŝŝe.*

738 Qui-, *be able*, and năqui-, *be unable*, are conjugated as *i-*, *go*.

739 Ai-, *affirm, say*, is seldom used except in the following forms :
IND. Pres. *Aio, aŭs, aŭt*; —, —, *aiunt.* Past. *Aiŝbam or aibam, aiebas, &c.*

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

745 Verbs called frequentative, and they are very numerous, are formed by adding the suffix *ŭta* to the simple verb ; as,

Ag-, *put in motion*, *ăgŭta-*, *put in frequent motion.*

Quaer-, *seek*, *quaerŭta-*, *seek perseveringly.*

Clăma-, *cry out*, *clămŭta-*, *keep crying out.*

Mîna- (r.), *threaten*, *mînŭta-* (r.), *keep threatening.*

Flu-, *flow*, *fluŭta-*, *keep flowing.*

Sequ- (r.), *follow*, *secta-* (r.), *be in the habit of following.*

746 As this suffix *ŭta* is very similar to *ŭto*, the suffix of perfect participles, similar contractions and alterations commonly take place ; thus,

Merg-, *sink*, participle *merso-*, frequentative *mersa-*.

Trăh-, *draw*, participle *tracto-*, frequentative *tracta-*.

Pël-, *push*, participle *pulso-*, frequentative *pulsa-*.

747 Some frequentatives are formed by the suffix *ŭtta*, as from *scrib-*, *write*, *scriptŭtta-* ; from *lěg-*, *read*, *lectŭtta-* ; from *vîv-*, *live*, *victŭtta-*.

752 Inceptive verbs are formed from verbs, substantives, and adjectives, with the suffix *esc* or *isc* ; as, from

ferv-, *boil*, *ferv-esc-* or *ferv-isc-*, *begin to boil.*

[*sěn-*,] *an old man*, *sěn-esc-*, *grow old.*

lŭc-, *light*, *lŭcisc-* or *lŭcesc-*, *get light.*

puĕro-, *a boy*, *rě-puĕra-sc-*, *become a boy again.*

intăgĕro- or *-a*, *whole*, *rěd-intăgra-sc-*, *become whole again.*

mătŭro- or *-a*, *ripe*, *mătŭresc-*, *ripen.*

vĕtĕs-, *old*, *vĕtĕrasc-*, *become old.*

Verbs compounded often undergo certain changes of the vowel. 758
Thus, *ǎ* frequently becomes *ɨ* before one consonant, *e* before two consonants: in this way we have from

čǎp- or *čǎpi-*, *take*, *accǎp-* or *accǎpi-*, *receive*, *accepto-*, *received*.

jǎc- or *jǎci-*, *throw*, *cǎnǎc-* or *cǎnǎci-*, *hurl*, *conjecto-*, *hurled*.

But the compounds of *cǎve-*, *beware*, *mǎne-*, *wait*, *trǎh-*, *draw*, remain unaltered.

Again, *ě* generally becomes *ɨ* before a single consonant; as, from 759

rěg-, *stretch*, *make straight*, *dirǐg-*, *guide*.

těne-, *keep*, *abstǎne-*, *keep away*.

But the compounds of *pět-*, *go* or *seek*, *těg-*, *cover*, *těr-*, *rub*, remain unaltered.

PARTICLES.

This term includes those secondary parts of speech which have 764
little or no variety of form, and are called adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed in Latin from adjectives and substantives, 767
including pronouns, and also from verbs.

From adjectives or participles in *o* or *a* are commonly formed 768
adverbs in *ē*: as, from

lǎto-, *wide*, *lǎtě*, *widely*.

docto-, *learned*, *doctě*, *learnedly*.

But *mǎlo-*, *bad*, and *běno-* (old form *běno-*) *good*, form their
adverbs, *mǎlē*, *ill*, and *běně*, *well*, with *ě*.

Some adjectives and participles in *o* or *a* form adverbs in *ō*: 771
as, from *rǎro-*, *scattered*, *rǎrō*, *seldom*; *tǔto-*, *safe*, *tǔtō*, *safely*.

From adjectives and participles in *i* or *a* consonant are formed 773
adverbs in *itě* or *tě*: as, from

molli-, *soft*, *mollitě*, *softly*.

měmōr-, *mindful*, *měmōritě*, *from memory*.

ǎmanti- or *ǎmant-*, *loving*, *ǎmantě*, *lovingly*.

Many adjectives, particularly comparatives, use their neuter 776
singular as an adverb: thus, from

făcili-, *easy*, *făcile*, *easily*.

multo-, *much*, *multum*, *much*.

doctiōs-, *more learned*, *doctiūs*, *more learnedly*.

- 779 Adjectives and substantives form adverbs in *tim*: thus, from
turma-, *squadron*, *turmătim*, *by squadrons*.
paulo- (n.), *little*, *paulătim*, *little by little*.
vîro-, *man*, *vîritim*, *man by man*.
tribu-, *tribe*, *tribătim*, *tribe by tribe*.

- 780 From verbs also are formed adverbs in *tim*: as, from
sta-, *stand*, *stătim*, *constantly*, *stătim*, *on the spot*.
caed-, *cut*, *caesim*, *by cutting*.
pung-, *pierce*, *punctim*, *by piercing*.

- 798 The preposition or adverb *vorsum* or *vorsūs*, *-wards*, is added to a number of adverbs in *o*, prepositions, &c.: as,

Horsum, *hitherward*; *istorsum*, *towards your neighbourhood*; *illorsum*, *towards yonder place*; *quorsum*, *in what direction*; *ăliorsum*, *in another direction*; *ălîquōvorsum*, *in some direction*; *quōquōvorsum*, *in every direction*; *ūtṛōquēvorsum*, *in both directions*; *advorsum*, *towards*; *prorsum* or *prōsum*, *forwards*, *downright*; *ursum* or *rūsum* (for *rēvorsum*), *backwards*, *again*; *deorsum*, *downwards*; *sursum* or *sūsum*, *upwards*; *intrōvorsum* or *introrsum*, *inwards*; *rētorsum*, *backwards*; *dextrōvorsum* or *dextrorsum*, *towards the right*; *sīnistorsum*, *towards the left*.

- 800 The prepositions that govern an ablative are prefixed to the pronominal adverbs in *ndē*, &c.: as,

Proindē or *proin*, *henceforward*, *therefore*, *accordingly*, *at once then*.

Deindē or *dein*, *after this*, *afterwards*.

Sūbindē, *soon after*, *ever and anon*.

Exindē, *exin* or *exim*, *after this*.

Abhinc, *from this time* (reckoning towards the past), *ago*.

Dehinc, *from this time forward*, *after this*.

- 802 The prepositions that govern an accusative are prefixed to pronouns in *am* or *ā*, which last also appear to have been corrupted from accusative pronouns in *am*: as,

Anteā, *before this* or *that*.

Praeterquam, *besides that*. . .

Posteā, *after this* or *that*.

Sūperquam, *over and above that*.

Intēreā, *in the meanwhile*.

Antehāc, *before this*.

Proptēreā, *for this* or *that reason*.

Posthāc, *after this*.

Praetēreā, *besides this* or *that*.

Praetēr hāc, *besides this*.

Antëquam, *before that*. . . . Postquam*, *after that*. . . .

The preposition tēnūs, *stretching*, is suffixed to pronominal forms 803 in ā : as,

Eātēnūs, *to that extent, so far*. Quātēnūs, *to what extent, so far as*. 806

Hactēnūs, *to this extent*. Aliquātēnūs, *to some extent*.

Istactēnūs, *so far as you*. Quādamtēnūs, *to a certain extent*.

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are particles that are prefixed to substantives and 808 verbs, and sometimes to other parts of speech. In their original sense they denote the relations of place ; as, sūb, *up* ; dē, *down* ; ōb, *towards*.

The prepositions āb *by* or *from*, sūb *up*, ōb *towards*, take an *s* in 810 composition with verbs which begin with one of the letters *p*, *c*, *t* ; as,

As-porta-, *carry away*. Sus-pend-, *hang up*. Sus-tīne-, *hold up*.

Abs-cond-, *put away*. Sus-cīp- or -cīpi-, *take* Os-tend-, *stretch to*

Abs-tīne-, *keep away*. up. wards.

Ec,[†] *out*, takes an *s* before the same consonants, and also before 811 vowels ; as, ex-pōn-, *put out* ; ex-curr-, *run out* ; ex-tend-, *stretch out* ; ex-īm-, *take out*.

Di, *different ways*, takes an *s* before the same consonants, and 812 takes *s*, or its substitute *r*, before vowels ; as,

Dis-pōn-, *put in different places*. Dis-īc- or -īci-,[‡] *throw different*

Dis-cēd-, *depart*. ways.

Dis-tīne-, *keep apart*. Dīr-īm-, *separate*.

The prepositions often lose one of their final letters. Thus āb 816 becomes ā in the composition of verbs which begin with the letter *m* ; as, ā-mōve-, *move away*. Before the verb fu-, *be*, āb and ā are both found ; as, ab-fuit or ā-fuit, *he was absent* ; while before the verbs fēr-, *carry*, fūg- or fūgi-, *fly*, the form au is used ; as, au-fēr-, *carry away*, au-fūg- or au-fūgi-, *fly away*.

* Those ending in *quam* are conjunctions. See § 847.

† This obsolete form is still preserved in the composition of verbs which begin with *f* : as, eo-fēr-, 'carry out' ; eo-fōd-, 'dig out,' &c.

‡ Commonly written *disjic*-.

- 817 *Ec, out*, commonly becomes *ē* before other consonants than *p*, *c*, *t*; as, *ē-bīb-*, *drink up*; *ē-dūc-*, *lead out*, &c.
- 818 *Prō, for*, before verbs beginning with *r* and *l* sometimes takes the form *por* and *pol*; as, *por-rīg-*, *stretch forward*, *pol-līc-* (*r.*), *bid beforehand*, *promise*.
- 820 *Cum, with*, before verbs becomes *com* or *cōn* or *co*; as, *cōm-ēd-*, *eat up*; *con-cīd-*, *cut to pieces*; *co-i-*, *go together*.
- 820* Generally, the final consonant of a preposition is often assimilated to the initial consonant of the verb. Thus *ād* is changed in the compounds *ac-clāma-*, *cry out at*, *af-fēr-*, *bring to*, *al-līga-*, *bind to*, *annu-*, *nod assent*, *ap-pāra-*, *put before*.
- 830 The prepositions* in use before substantives are the following.
- First, before accusatives alone:
- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| <i>ād, to.</i>
<i>advorsum</i> or <i>advorsūs,</i>
<i>towards.</i>
<i>antē, before.</i>
<i>āpūd, near.</i>
<i>circā, round.</i>
<i>circitēr, about.</i>
<i>circum, round.</i>
<i>cis, on this side of.</i>
<i>citrā, on this side of.</i>
<i>contrā, facing, against.</i> | <i>ergā, towards.</i>
<i>infā, below.</i>
<i>intēr, between.</i>
<i>intrā, within.</i>
<i>juxtā, near.</i>
<i>ob, towards, on ac-</i>
<i>count of.</i>
<i>pēnēs, in the hands</i>
<i>of.</i>
<i>pēr, through.</i>
<i>post, after.</i> | <i>praetēr, beside.</i>
<i>prōpē, near.</i>
<i>prōpiūs, nearer.</i>
<i>proximē, nearest.</i>
<i>proptēr, near, on ac-</i>
<i>count of.</i>
<i>secundum, following.</i>
<i>sūprā, above.</i>
<i>trans, across.</i>
<i>[uls], beyond.</i>
<i>ultrā, beyond.</i> |
|---|---|---|

- 831 Secondly, before ablatives alone:

<i>āb, abs</i> or <i>ā, by</i> or <i>from.</i> <i>absquē, without.</i> <i>cum, with.</i> <i>dē, down from, from.</i>	<i>[ēc], ex</i> or <i>ē, out of, from.</i> <i>prae, before.</i> <i>prō, before.</i> <i>sīnē, without.</i>
---	--

- 832 Thirdly, before an accusative or ablative:

<i>īn, in</i> or <i>into.</i> <i>sūb, up</i> or <i>under.</i>	<i>subtēr, under.</i> <i>sūpēr, upon.</i>
--	--

* Those prepositions which require the ablative are included in the first two of the following lines; those which are found with both, in the third line. All others have the accusative alone.

Absquē cum sīne, ab cōramquē,
Prae prō dē tēnūs, ec pālamquē;
Both sūpēr in sub, subtēr clamquē.

Clam, *secretly*; cōram, *face to face*; pālam, *openly*; sīmūl, *at 833 the same time*; tēnūs, *extending*; versūs, *towards*; usquē, *all the way or all the time*, are rather adverbs than prepositions.

Other prepositions are found in the composition of verbs and 834 adjectives, viz. :

Am, *round*; as, am-būr-, *burn round, singe*; am-bēd-, *eat round*; and the adj. ancīp- or ancīpīt-, *two-headed*.

Di or dīs, *different ways*; as, dis-cēd-, *depart*; and from corda-, *string*, the adj. dis-cord- or dis-cordi-, *of a different note*.

Rē or rēd, *back*; as, rē-pēl-, *drive back*; rēd-i-, *go back*; and the adj. rē-dūc-, *returning*.

Sē or sēd, *aside*; as, sē-pōn-, *put aside*; and the adjective sē-cūro-, *unconcerned*.

Veh or vē, *away*; as the adj. vē-cord- (*heartless, i.e.*) *senseless*; vēh-ē-menti- or vēh-ē-ment- (*devoid of mind*), *furious*.

TABLE OF DERIVATIONS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

838

From	with s or d	ēro, tēro	ēr, tēr	rā, trā	rō, trō	Superla- tive	Comp. from ēro, tēro	Superlat. from ēro, tēro
īn	ind	[intēro-]	intēr	intrā	intrō	īmo- [*] intūmo- }	intēriōr-	—
[ēc]	ex	extēro-	—	extrā	—	extūmo-	extēriōr-	extrēmo-
sūb	sus	sūpēro-	sūpēr	sūprā	—	summo-	sūpēriōr-	sūprēmo-
dē	—	[dētēro-]	—	—	—	—	dētēriōr-	dētērrīmo-
[neff]	—	infēro-	—	infra	—	infūmo-	infēriōr-	—
prō	prōd-	—	—	—	porrō	primo-†	—	—
rē	rēd	[rētēro-]	—	—	rētrō	—	—	—
[ci]	cīs	[cītēro-]	—	citrā	citrō	cītūmo-	cītēriōr-	—
[olš]	uls	[ultēro-]	—	ultrā	ultrō	ultūmo-	ultēriōr-	—
post	postīd	postēro-	—	—	—	postūmo-	postēriōr-	postrēmo-
antē	antīd	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
cōn	—	[contēro-]	—	contra	—	—	—	—

CONJUNCTIONS.

The name 'conjunction' is commonly given to several classes 839 of particles which require to be distinguished.

* *Inmost or lowest.* † Compare the English *neath, nether*.

‡ Add the comparative *prior* (*pro-ior*), 'first of two, former.'

§ *Ci* is related to *ho-*, 'this'; *ol* to *illo-* (or *blo-*), 'yonder.'

- 840 *Copulative* conjunctions are those which unite words, phrases, or sentences, without making one dependent upon another. Such are *et*, *and*; the enclitic *quē*, *and*; *atquē*, *and*; *vēl*, *or*; *aut*, *or*; together with the interrogative particles *an*, *or*; *nē*, *or*.
- 841 There are several words compounded of the above particles which also serve as copulative conjunctions: for instance, *nēquē*, *nor*; *nēvē*, *nor*; *sivē*, *or if*.
- 842 Many of these may be used in pairs: *as*, *et hoc et illūd*, *both this and that*; *Dique hōmīnesquē*, *both gods and men*; *vēl hoc vēl illūd*, *either this or that*; *aut hoc aut illūd*, *either this or that*; *nēque hoc nēque illūd*, *neither this nor that*; *sivē hoc sivē illūd*, *whether this or that*.
- 843 Several of the particles above mentioned admit of abbreviation. Thus, *atquē*, *vēl*, *nēquē*, *nēvē*, *sivē*, may severally become *ac*, *vē* (an enclitic), *nēc*, *neu*, *seu*.
- 846 *Accessory* conjunctions are those which unite a dependent sentence to the main sentence, as *antēquam* in the compound sentence: *antēquam lux nōs obprīmat*, *ērumpāmūs*, *let us sally out, before daylight comes upon us*.
- 847 *Accessory* conjunctions are often formed by prefixing a preposition to some derivative from the pronoun *quo*:- *as*, *quam* or *ūt*. Thus there are: *post-quam*, *after that* or *after*; *antē-quam*, *before that* or *before*; *sūper-quam*, *beyond what*; *pro-ūt*, *according as*.
- 848 Conjunctions of this character perform for a secondary sentence the same office which simple prepositions perform for nouns. Thus we may say either, *post rēditūm ējūs*, *after his return*, or *postquam rēdiit*, *after he returned*.
- 859 Many conjunctions have correlative adverbs in the main sentence which point to them. Thus, *itā*, *so*, and *sic*, *so*, answer to *ūt*, *as*; *tam*, *so*, to *quam*, *as*; *tum*, *then*, to *quum*, *when*; *tāmēn*, *yet*, to *quanquam* or *etsi*, *although*; *āt*, *yet*, to *si*, *if*.

INTERJECTIONS.

- 860 Interjections are abbreviated sentences which denote a sudden and hasty emotion of the mind. They are commonly inserted in another sentence as a parenthesis.

SYNTAX.



SYNTAX means the connexion of words in a sentence.

866

SUBSTANTIVES.

NOMINATIVE.

The nominative case marks the quarter from which an action 867 proceeds. Hence the nominative is commonly a living being, as :

Vipērā limam mōmordit, *a viper bit a file.*

Apēr sēgētēs prōculcat, *the wild boar tramples down the crops.*

Instead of living beings, inanimate* and abstract nouns are 868 often used as the nominative, as :

Cursum mūtāvit amnis, *the river has changed its course.*

Diēs lēnit Irās, *time assuages wrath.*

The agent may act upon the agent. Hence the nominative is 869 used with reflective verbs, as :

Rhēnus septentrionālī ōceānō miscētūr, *the Rhine mixes (itself) with the Northern Ocean.*

As the use of the passive has grown out of that of the reflective, 870 the nominative is also found with passive verbs, as :

Insulā adpellātur Monā, *the island is called Mona,—literally, calls itself Mona.*

As verbs of a static character have generally something of 871 action mixed up with them, the nominative is used before static verbs, as :

Tūrē cālent ārae, *the altars are warm (or glow) with incense.*

Thus the nominative is used before verbs of almost every kind. 873 A very common use of it is before the verb signifying 'be,' as :

Tu es tristīs, *you are melancholy.*

Sēnectūs ipsa est morbūs, *old age itself is a disease.*

* This savours of poetry ; but language in its early state is always and of necessity what we call poetical.

- 874 Some grammarians are in the habit of treating those sentences which have the verb 'be,' as the form to which all others are to be reduced. Hence they divide a sentence into three parts :

The Subject, that of which you speak ;

The Predicate, that which you say of the subject ; and

The Copula, or verb 'be,' which unites the subject and predicate.

Thus, for instance, in the sentence or proposition, 'man is an animal,' *man* is the subject, *animal* the predicate, *is* the copula.

The subject, according to this system, is the nominative case. When, instead of the verb 'be,' another verb is used, they resolve it into some part of the verb 'be' and a participle. Thus, *Cicero writes a letter* is resolved into *Cicero is writing a letter* ; where *Cicero* is the subject, *writing a letter* the predicate, *is* the copula.

- 875 The substantive, adjective, or participle that accompanies the verb 'be' as a *predicate*, is in Latin made to agree with the subject nominative, and is called the nominative of the predicate : thus,

Săpientia est rerum divinarum et humanarum scientiă, philosophy is the knowledge of things divine and human.

Insignis annus hiemę nivösă fuit, the year was remarkable for a snowy winter.

Viae clausae, Tiberis innavigabilis fuit, the roads were blocked up, the Tiber not navigable.

- 876 In the same manner other verbs have at times a nominative in the *predicate* referring to and agreeing with the subject nominative, as :

Munitiões integrę manebant, the fortifications remained untouched.

- 877 The accusative with the active verb becomes a nominative with the passive, as :

Marcium consulem creaverunt, they made Marcus consul.

Marcus consul creatus est, Marcus was made consul.

- 878 Even when these verbs are in the infinitive mood dependent upon another verb, the noun in the predicate referring to the subject nominative will still agree in case with the subject nominative, if no reflective pronoun in the accusative be interposed, as :

Hominēs minus creduli esse coeperunt, men began to be less credulous.

Vis formosă videri, you wish to appear beautiful.

VOCATIVE.

The vocative is used in addressing a person, as : 882
 Dic, Marcē Tulli, *speak, Marcus Tullius.*

ACCUSATIVE.

The accusative case answers to the question *whither*. Hence 884
 motion to towns or small islands is expressed by the accusative,
 as :

Concessit Cāpuam, *he withdrew to Capua.*
 Nāvīgābat Sŷrācūsās, *he was sailing to Syracuse.*

The accusatives dōmum, rūš, fōrās, are used after verbs of 886
 motion, as :

Dōmum rēvertērē, *they returned home.*
 Rūs ībo, *I shall go into the country.*
 Ecŷfūgī fōrās, *I escaped into the street.*

The verbal substantives in *tu* (called Supines) are used in the 887
 accusative after verbs of motion, as :

Eō pābūlātum vēnīent, *they will come here to get fodder.*
 Spēro dēbellātum īrī, *I hope that they are going to finish the*
war.

After active verbs the object to which the action is directed is 888
 put in the accusative case, as :

Dōmīnus servom verbērāvit, *the master flogged the slave.*

The impersonal verbs of feeling have the accusative of the per- 889
 son who suffers that feeling :

Mē mīśret ŷjūs, et pīget ;
 Pūdet taedetque ac paenītet,—as :
 Eōs infāmiae suae non pūdet, *they are not ashamed of their*
infamy.

Many reflective verbs, called Deponents, take an accusative, as : 891
 Nātūram ŷēqui, *to follow nature.*

Some verbs, commonly intransitive, take an accusative of a 894
 noun related to the verb in form or meaning (called the *cognate*
accusative) ; often in order to attach thereto an adjective, as :

Mīrum somniāvī somnium, *I have dreamed a wonderful dream.*

Similarly, the verbs of *smelling* and *taste*, and a few others, 895
 take an accusative which defines the nature, as :

Piscī īpsūm mārē ŷāpīt, *the fish tastes of the very sea.*
 Olet pērēgrīnum, *it has a foreign smell.*

- 896 Verbs of *making, creating, electing*, have an accusative of the new condition or office (called the *factitive accusative*), besides the accusative of the object, as :

Me hēbētem mōlestiae reddidērunt, *for myself, troubles have made me dull of feeling.*

Ancum Marcium rēgem pōpūlus creāvit, *the citizens elected Ancus Marcius king.*

- 897 So also verbs of *calling, thinking, showing*, take two accusatives, as :

Octāvium sui Caesārem sālūtābant, *Octavius his own friends saluted as Caesar.*

Sōcrātēs tōtīūs mundi sē civem arbitrābātūr, *Socrates thought himself a citizen of the universe.*

Grātum mē praebeō, *I show myself grateful.*

- 898 The verbs *dōce-, teach, cēla-, hide, keep in the dark*, may have two accusatives, one of the thing, one of the person, as :

Quid tē littērās dōceam? *what, am I to teach you your letters?*

Non tē cēlāvi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.*

- 899 The thing taught or concealed may be in the accusative with the passives of these verbs, the accusative of the person becoming the subject, as :

Cēlābār, *I was kept in the dark.*

Nosne hoc cēlātōs? *to think that we should have been kept in the dark about this.*

- 902 Many verbs of *asking, begging, demanding*, may have two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, as :

Pācēm tē poscīmūs omnēs, *peace of thee ask we all.*

- 903 The thing asked with the passive verb may be an accusative, as :

Nōn sum rōgātus sententiam, *I was not asked my opinion.*

- 909 The neuters of pronouns and common adjectives or substantives are often used in the accusative where other nouns in the accusative would be rare, or even inadmissible. In these cases the English language often requires the insertion of a preposition, as :

Id tībī suscenseo, *I am angry with you for this.*

Unum stūdētīs, *you are eager for one object.*

- 911 After many active verbs, instead of a single word, a whole sentence may take the place of the object, in which case the second

dary verb is put in the infinitive mood, and the agent or subject of that verb is put in the accusative, called the subject-accusative. Thus,

Caesar rēdiit, *Cæsar is returned.*

Nuntiant Caesārem rēdiissē, *they bring word that Cæsar is returned.*

The prepositions *in* and *sūb* sometimes require the accusative, 913 and always after a verb of motion, as :

In urbe est, *he is in the city*; but, In urbem vēnit, *he comes into the city.*

Sub mūrō stāt, *he stands under the wall*; but, Sub mūrum vēnit, *he comes up to the wall.*

The majority of the other prepositions, which do not imply 914 'motion from,' also govern the accusative. (See Prepositions, § 830, note.)

Extent of place or time or degree is commonly expressed in the 915 accusative, as :

A rectā conscientiā nōn transvorsum unguem discēdit, *he departs not a nail's breadth from a right conscience.*

Fossa undēcim pēdēs lātā, *a ditch eleven feet broad.*

Dēcem annōs urbs oppugnāta est, *for ten years was the city besieged.*

Undēviginti annōs nātūs, *nineteen years old.*

In sentences of exclamation the accusative often appears, the 918 verb with which it should have been connected being suppressed, as :

Mē caecum qui haec antē non vīdērim, *my blindness, not to have seen all this before.*

GENITIVE.

919

The genitive, like the nominative, denotes 'from.' The difference between their uses is this, that the nominative denotes the source of the action expressed by a *verb*, while the genitive is used chiefly in connection with *substantives*.

GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

920

The genitive is attached to another substantive to denote the source of an action, and may be translated by 'from,' 'of,' or the English genitive in *s*, as :

Consūlis jussū, *by an order from the consul, by the consul's order, by order of the consul.*

- 922 When of or from a whole a certain part only is taken, that whole is expressed by the genitive. This is often called the *partitive* genitive, as :

Pars militum, *a part of the soldiers.*

Orātōrum praestantissimī, *the most distinguished of orators.*

Rēliquo noctis, *the rest of the night.*

Id negoti, *that piece of business, or that business.*

- 923 The same partitive use of the genitive is found with adverbs :
Ubi gentium? *where among the nations? in what part of the whole world?*

- 924 When a thing is said to belong to a person, it has generally come from him. Hence the owner is in the genitive, which is then called the *possessive* genitive, as :

Pātris tui annūlūs, *your father's ring.*

Omnia hostium erant, *the whole country belonged to the enemy.*

- 925 The *possessive* or *partitive* genitive is very common in speaking of a character, office, part, duty, as :

Cūjusvis hōmīnis est errāre, *it is in the character of every man to make a mistake.*

Jūdicis est, quid lex cōgat, cōgītāre, *it is the duty of a judge to consider what the law requires.*

- 926 The genitive of *connection* is not unfrequent, as :

Marci filiūs, *the son of Marcus.*

Māter consūlis, *the mother of the consul.*

- 927 The *objective* genitive is that where the genitive takes the place of what would be the object after a verb. In this case the English often requires the substitution of another preposition for 'of,' as :

Nīmia aestūmātio sui, *an excessive valuation of himself.*

Injūriā mūliērum, *the wrong done to the women.*

Which phrases severally correspond to se aestūmāre, mūliēres injūriā afficere.

- 928 The genitive of the *quality* or *quantity* requires an adjective or participle with it, as :

Vir spectātae vīrtūtis, *a man of proved merit.*

Sex jūgerum āger, *a farm of six jugers or four acres.*

Fossā quīndēcim pēdum, *a ditch of fifteen feet (in width).*

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives and participles are sometimes followed by a genitive 929 of the *cause* in the poets and later writers, as:

Lassus mārīs, weary of the sea.

Interrītus lēti, not frightened at death.

Adjectives or participles which denote *removal* or separation 930 may be followed by a genitive in the poets, as:

Sōlūtūs ōpērum, set loose from work.

Liber lābōrum, free from toils.

Adjectives of *fullness* may be followed by a genitive, as: 931

Dōmus plēna ēbriōrum, a house full of drunken men.

Lactīs ābundans, abounding in milk.

Some adjectives, formed from substantives, retain the substan- 932 tive's power of being attended by a genitive, as:

Stūdīōsūs ēquōrum, fond of horses.

Expers ērūditīōnīs, without any share of education.

Adjectives denoting *accusation, guilt, or innocence*, are followed 933 by a genitive, as:

Reūs āvāritīae, charged with avarice.

Sanguīnīs insons, guiltless of blood.

Many adjectives from verbs, and participles imperfect used as 934 adjectives, are followed by an objective genitive, as:

Cūpīdus vērītātīs, eager for truth.

Tēnax prōpōsītī, ever clinging to his purpose.

Effīciens vōluptātīs, productive of pleasure.

Adjectives, in the later writers, take a genitive which may be 935 translated by 'in,' 'in respect to,' as:

Vālīdūs ōpum, strong in resources.

Strēnuus mīlītiaē, energetic in war.

GENITIVES WITH VERBS.

The impersonal verbs of *feeling* (see § 889), together with the 938 personal verbs *mīšēre-* (r.) and *mīšēresc-*, take a genitive of the moving cause, as:

*Pūdet mē tuī, (shame comes to me from you, i. e.) I am ashamed of your conduct or your treatment.**

* *I am ashamed of you will serve for the first sense.*

- 940 Occasionally verbs of *removal* or *separation* have a genitive of the 'whence' in old writers and in poetry, as :

Dēsīnē mollium tandem quērēlārū, cease at last from complaints unmanly.

Tempus dēsistērē pugnae, 'tis time to desist from battle.

- 941 Some verbs of *fulness*, *want*, and *need*, may have a partitive genitive (as well as an ablative), as :

Ollam dēnāriōrū implērē non pōtēs, you cannot fill the pitcher with denaries.

Non tam artīs indīgēt quam lābōrīs, it is not so much skill they are in need of as industry.

- 942 The verb *pōti*- (r.), *make oneself master*, has a genitive (as well as an ablative), as :

Pōtēs illius regnī pōtīrī, you can make yourself master of that kingdom.

Rērū pōtīrī, to make oneself master of the world.

- 943 Verbs of *memory*, although they take an accusative of the thing actually remembered, have a genitive of that *about* which the memory is concerned, as :

Mēmīni Cinnam, I remember Cinna (i. e. his person).

Mēmīni vivōrū, I remember or think of the living.

Nunquam obliviscar noctīs illiūs, I shall never forget (the occurrences of) that night.

- 944 Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *acquitting*, take a genitive of the offence charged : as,

Ambītūs accūsārī dēbuērunt, they ought to have been accused of bribery.

Pōtestne hērēs furti āgērē ? can an heir bring an action for theft ?

- 946 With verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *costing*, the price is expressed by the genitives *tantī*, *quantī*, *mīnōris*, *plūrīs* ; in all other cases by an ablative.

- 947 The *worth* or *value* is expressed by the same genitives, and also by *parvī*, *magnī*, *mīnūmī*, *maxūmī*, and *plūrūmī*, as well as the following, which generally are strengthened by the addition of a negative : viz.

Hūjūs et assis, floccī plīquē,

Nauci nīhīlī, tērunciquē.

DATIVE.

The dative case answers to the question *where?* in or near *what place?* and to the time *when?* Hence its place is often supplied by such words as *in* or *cum* with the ablative, or by the ablative alone, seeing that the ablative is another form of the dative.

In a town or in a small island is expressed by the dative, as : 951

Rōmae, at Rome (or Rome); Tibŭri, at Tibur;

Athēnis, at Athenæ (or Athens); Cŭribŭs, at Cures;

Tārentō, more commonly Tārenti, Ithācae, in Ithaca;

at Tarentum; Lesbī, in Lesbos.

Pūtēōlis, at Puteoli;

Hŭmī, on the ground; dōmī, at home; rūri (in poetry also 952 rūrē), in the country; fōris, out of doors; ānīmī, in the mind, are other examples of the dative used in the same sense.

The so-called adverbs which answer to the question *where?* as, 953 ūbī, &c. (§ 366, col. 2), are all datives in origin.

The time *when?* is put in the dative : as, hēri or hērē, yesterday; 954 māni or mănē, in the morning; vespēri or vespērē, in the evening; bellī, in war; milītiæ, on military service; ūbī, when, &c.

The dative is used with adjectives or verbs which denote near- 955 ness, or the other static relations of place, as :

Belgæ proximi sunt Germānis, the Belgæ are nearest to the Germans.

Collis adversus huic et contrārius, a hill facing and opposite to this.

Nescit equo haerere, he knows not how to cling to a steed.

Os cucurbitulae corpore aptatur, the mouth of the cupping-gourd is brought into close contact with the flesh.

Solo aequare dictaturas et consulatus, to level with the ground the offices of dictator and consul.

Hence also many verbs compounded with prepositions of proxi- 962 mity may be accompanied by a dative, as :

Hi scribendo affuerunt, the following were present at the registration.

Tu meo errori illacrumasti, you wept over my mistake.

Campus interjacens Tiberi ac moenibus Romanis, the plain that lies between the Tiber and the walls of Rome.

Brutum copiis praefecit, he placed Brutus at the head of the forces.

Anātum ōvā gallinīs saepē suppōnīmūs, *we often put ducks' eggs under hens.*

- 964 Generally, the relation in which any thing or person stands to any other thing or person is expressed by a dative, after adjectives or static verbs, as :

Nātūrā tu illi pātēr ēs, *by nature you are his father.*

Mihī quaeſtōr impērātōrī fuērat, *he had been my quaeſtor when I was commander-in-chief.*

Hōmīnēs omnībūs īnīquī, *men unfriendly to every one.*

Irascī āmicīs non tēmēre sōleo, *I am not wont with light cause to be angry with friends.*

Mihī quidem itā vidētūr, *to me at least it seems so.*

Id vērō militībūs fuit pergrātum, *this indeed was very gratifying to the soldiers.*

Hoc omnībūs pātēt, *this is open to all.*

- 971 Many reflective and a few simple verbs derived from nouns denote a relation more or less permanent, and are accompanied by a dative of the person.

Ego possum īn hac rē mēdicārī mihī, *I in this matter can be physician to myself.*

Appius mihī blandītūr, *Appius is all politeness to me.*

Caesārī supplicābo, *I will go down on my knees to Caesar.*

Aliī glōriāe serviunt, āliī pēcūniāe, *some are slaves to glory, others to money.*

- 972 Verbs which denote an act done in the presence of another concerned therein take a dative of that person, as :

Pōtenti ādulātūs est, *he fawned on the powerful man.*

Virgo nupsit Mētellō, *the maiden took the veil* to Metellus, i.e. married him.*

Hoc tibi suādeo, *I recommend this to you,—literally, I sweeten it for you.*

Hoc nobis invīdet, *he envies us this,—literally, he regards it with an evil eye.*

- 973 Verbs of showing and telling take a dative of the person addressed, as :

Haec tibi tuus pārens dixit, *all this your own father told you.*

Altēri monſtrant viam, *they show the road to another.*

* The flame-coloured veil, *flammeōlo* (n.), was worn in the ceremony of marriage.

Verbs of *giving* are followed by a dative of the person to 974 whom? as:

Dēdi ad tē libertō tuō littērās, *I gave a letter to your freedman (to convey) to you.*

Reddīdit mihi littērās, *he delivered the letter to me.*

Verbs of *trusting* have a dative of the person in whom trust is 975 placed, as:

Sē āliēnissimis crēdīdērunt, *they trusted themselves to perfect strangers.*

Crēdon tibi hoc? *am I to believe this that you tell me?*

Qui sibi fidit, *who in himself confides.*

The dative of the person is used in speaking of acts done to 977 some part of the body (where the English language prefers a possessive pronoun or possessive case), as:

Linguam ei praeidam atque oculos ecfodiam, *I will cut his tongue off and dig his eyes out.*

Similarly the dative of the person concerned is found even 978 with verbs of *taking away*, and hence appears to signify 'from,' as:

Ingens cui lumen ademptum, *from whom a huge eye had been taken away.*

Id totum eripere vobis conatus est, *all this he has endeavoured to tear from you.*

The dative of the personal pronoun more particularly is used 979 to denote an interest of the party, and often ironically. This is often called by grammarians the *dativus ethicus*.

Tongilium mihi eduxit, *Tongilius he has done me the favour to take out (of Rome) with him.*

The dative of the person with *es*-, 'be,' often denotes the *pos-**979 *essor*, or him to whom the matter belongs, as:

His opes nullae sunt, *these persons have no property,—more literally, no property is to them.*

Hoc mihi susceptum est, *this I have undertaken.*

Idem tibi faciendum est, *you have to do the same, i. e. you ought to do it.*

Verbs of motion accompanied by another word or phrase have 980 often a dative of the person, which is really dependent upon this word or phrase, as:

Equitatum auxiliō Caesarī miserant, *they had sent a body of cavalry as an aid to Caesar.*

Mihi obviam vēnistī, *you came to meet me.*

- 981 Some verbs entitled to take a dative of the person are at times found with a dative of the thing instead, as :

Hōnōri invidērunt meō, *they looked with envy on the office I hold.*

Morbō mēdērī, *to heal a disease.*

Ignoscas vēlim huic festinātiōnī, *pray forgive my present haste.*

- 982 A dative of a noun often denotes *in lieu of*, and may be translated by 'as,' thus :

Quinquē cohortis castris praesidiō reliquit, *he left five battalions as a garrison for the camp.*

Hoc vitiō mihi dant, *this they set down as a fault in me.*

Ut sint reliquis dōcūmentō, *that they may serve as a lesson to the rest.*

- 983 Hence the dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, as :
Hunc sibi dōmīciliō locum dēlēgerunt, *this place they selected as a residence.*

Hic nuptiis dictus est diēs, *this is the day fixed for the marriage.*

- 984 The dative of a *name* is often used by attraction to the dative of the object named, as :

Cui nunc cognōmēn Iūlo additūr, *who has now the surname of Iulus added.*

Lēges quibus tābūlis duōdēcim est nōmēn, *the laws which have the name of the twelve tables.*

- 986 The poets often use the dative in the sense of 'with,' where the older prose writers used cum, as :

Luctantem Icāriis fluctibūs, *wrestling with Icarian waves.*

Forti miscēbat mellā Fālernō, *with strong Falernian he would honey mix.*

- 988 The poets use the dative (especially in nouns of the *o* declension) after verbs of motion, as :

It clāmor caelō, *rises the shout to heaven.*

ABLATIVE.

- 989 The ablative is another form of the dative, and its uses are therefore very similar.

- 990 *At a town or in a small island* the poets express by an ablative

when the metre requires it, which can be only in the third or consonant declension, as :

Dardaniumque dūcem Tŷriā Karthāgīnē quī nunc Expectat
(*Virg.*), and the Dardan chief at Tyrian Carthage who Now
loitereth.

Time *when* is commonly expressed in the ablative, as: 992

Bellum eōdem tempōrē mihi quōque indixit, *he declared war at
the same time against me too.*

From the notion of *where*, the ablative is used with the pre- 996
positions *in* and *sūb*, if there be no motion implied, and also with
prae, *prō*, &c. (See § 830, note).

In, *in voint of*, *in respect to*, is often the meaning of the 997
ablative, as :

Scēlērē pār est illi, industria infēriōr, *in wickedness he is equal
to the other, in industry below him.*

Lēpōre omnībus praestītit, *in wit he excelled all.*

Plērāquē dictū quam rē sunt faciōrā, *most things are easier in
the saying than in the reality, i. e. easier to say than to do.*

The substantive *ōpēs*- (n.), *work*, and occasionally *ūsū*- (m.), 999
advantage, have an ablative to express the object which is wanted,
as :

Cur prōpērāto ōpūs est? *why is it necessary to hurry?*

Gūbernātōre ōpūs est, *there is need of a pilot.*

By or *with*, &c. is frequently the translation of the ablative 1000
when it denotes the instrument or means, as :

Cornībus taurī, āprī dentībus sē tūtantūr, *with horns the bull,
with tusks the boar defends himself.*

Patriae ignī ferrōquē minītātūr, *he threatens his country with
fire and sword.*

The ablative of the *means* accompanies the five reflective verbs, 1001
ūt-, * *nīt*-, *vesc*-, *fru*-, *pasc*-, as :

Pellībūs ūtuntūr, *they use skins.*

* The literal translation of these verbs would perhaps be: *ūtōr*, 'I
assist myself with any thing,' i. e. 'I use it'; *nītōr*, 'I strain myself by
acting upon something,' i. e. 'I lean upon it'; *vescōr*, 'I feed myself
with' or 'I eat' (used in speaking of human beings exclusive of slaves);
fruōr, 'I feed myself with' or 'I enjoy'; *pascōr*, 'I feed myself with' or
'eat' (used in speaking of animals and slaves).

Pūrā qui nititur hastā, who rests him on a simple shaft.

Lactē vescuntur, they live upon milk.

Lūcē fruimur, we enjoy the light of day.

Fronibus pascuntur, they feed themselves with branches.

- 1002 The ablative of the means in the same way accompanies the verbs, *viv-*, *live*; *fid-*, *trust*; and the participle *frēto-*, *relying*, as :

Lactē vivunt, they live upon milk.

Prudentiā consiliōquē fidens, trusting in foresight and mental power.

Ingēniō frēti, relying upon their talent.

- 1003 The ablative of the means is used with the verb *fāc-*, *make* or *do*.

Nescit quid faciāt aurō, he knows not what to do with the gold.

- 1004 The ablative of the means often accompanies verbs or adjectives of *filling*, *increasing*, *mixing*, *joining*, &c., as :

Nāvis cōlōnis pastōribusquē complēt, he fills the ships with farm-labourers and shepherds.

Lāpīdibus plūvit, it rained stones.

- 1005 The *price* is the means by which any thing is obtained in purchase, and hence the ablative accompanies verbs and adjectives of *buying*,* *selling*, *bidding*, and *valuing*, as :

Emēre āquae sextārium mīnā cōguntur, they are compelled to buy a pint of water for a mina.

Multō sanguīne Poenīs victōriā stētit, the victory cost the Carthaginians much blood.

- 1008 The *road by which* any thing is moved is also a means, and therefore expressed by the ablative, as :

Frūmentum flūmīne Arārī nāvibus subvexerat, he had conveyed corn in ships up the river Arar.

- 1009 The attending *circumstances*, *manner*, *feelings*, are expressed by the ablative, as :

Summā contentiōnē dixit, he spoke with the exertion of all his power.

Infestis armīs concurrunt, they run together with their arms aimed at each other.

* *Em-ērē*, commonly translated 'to buy,' means properly 'to take,' as is seen in the compounds *dēm-*, *exīm-*, *sūm-*, &c. See § 544.

The ablative of *quality* is the name usually given to that use 1010 of the case which denotes a condition of mind or body, &c. But it is essential that an adjective accompany this ablative :

Tantā est eloquentiā, he is a man of such eloquence.

Spēluncā infinitā altitudinē, a cavern of boundless depth.

Ablative absolute is the name commonly employed when an 1013 ablative of a noun is accompanied by a substantive, adjective, or participle, to denote 'the time when,' 'the means by which,' or any 'attending circumstances.' It therefore belongs properly to the heads already given, as :

Abl. abs. of time when: Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōnē coss.* conjūrātiōnem fēcit, *this man in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso formed a conspiracy,—literally, M. Messala, M. Piso being consuls.*

Abl. abs. of means: Cātāpultis dispōsītis mūrōs dēfensōribus nūdāverat, *by his catapults placed at different points he had cleared the wall of its defenders, or, he had placed his catapults at different points and so had cleared, &c.*

Abl. abs. of circumstances: Nātūrā dūce errārī nōn pōtest, *with nature for our guide, the path cannot be mistaken.*

Quid dicam hāc jūventūtē? *what am I to say with such young men as we have now-a-days?*

The *comparative* takes an ablative of the object with which the 1015 comparison is made, as :

Viliūs argentumst aurō, virtūtībūs aurum, *silver than gold is cheaper, gold than virtue.*

Similarly the adjectives digno-, indigno-, and the verbs formed 1016 therefrom, take an ablative of the object with which the comparison is made, as :

Eum omnēs cognitiōnē dignum existūmārunt, *this man all deemed worthy of their acquaintance.*

Haud equidem tālī mē dignōr hōnōrē, *not in truth of such an honour do I deem me worthy.*

The amount of distance or difference in time, space, or quan- 1017 tity, is commonly expressed in the ablative, as :

Id viginti annis antē fēcērat Cōriōlānūs, *this Coriolanus had done twenty years before.*

* To be read, *Marcō, Marcō, consūlibūs.*

Haec est aetās dēcem annīs mīnor quam consūlārīs, *this age is ten years less than that required for a consul.*

Mīlībꝯ passuum sex ā Caesāris castris consēdit, *he took a position six miles from Caesar's camp.*

- 1018 The ablatives of pronouns and adjectives of quantity are much used in this way with comparatives, as :

Viā quantō tūtior, tantō fērē longiōr, *a road longer in about the same proportion as it was safer.*

Quō diffīciliūs, hoc praeclāriūs, *the more difficult, the more glorious.*

- 1021 A true ablative ending in the letter *d* belonged to the old language, and the loss of this *d* led to a form very similar to the weakened dative commonly called the ablative. Hence, *from a town* is sometimes expressed by a mere ablative, as :

Cōrīnthō fūgit, *he fled from Corinth.*

- 1022 Similarly the adjectives rūrē and dōmō are used : as,
Cībāriā sībī quemquē dōmo adferrē jūbent, *they bid them bring food from home, every man for himself.*
Pāter rūrē rēdiit, *my father is returned from the country.*

- 1023 Verbs and adjectives of *removal* and *separation* are followed by an ablative, as :

Sē locō mōvērē nōn pōtērant, *they could not move from where they were.*

Tuōs culpā libēro, *I free your people from blame.*

Rōmā cārēmūs, *we are deprived of Rome.*

- 1024 The verbs or participles which denote *birth* or *origin* take an ablative, as :

Mercūrius, Jōvē nātūs et Maiā, *Mercury born of Jupiter and Maia.*

- 1025 The prepositions which signify *removal* or *separation* have an ablative, as : *ex, dē, āb, sīnē, absquē, clam.* See § 830, note.

ADJECTIVES.

- 1037 Adjectives and participles are attracted into the same case, gender, and number as the substantive to which they refer.

Thus, from docto- or docta-, *learned*, and hōmōn-, *man* ; bōno- or bōna-, *good*, mūliēr-, *woman* ; grāvi-, *heavy*, ōnēs-, *load*, we have :

SINGULAR.

N. doctūs hōmo.	bōnā mūliēr.	grāvē ōnūs.
V. doctē hōmo.	bōnā mūliēr.	grāvē ōnūs.
Ac. doctum hōmīnem.	bōnam mūliērem.	grāvē ōnūs.
G. docti hōmīnis.	bōnae mūliēris.	grāvis ōnēris.
D. doctō hōmīni.	bōnae mūliēri.	grāvi ōnēri.
Ab. doctō hōmīnē.	bōnā mūliērē.	grāvi ōnērē.

PLURAL.

N. docti hōmīnēs.	bōnae mūliērēs.	grāviā ōnērā.
V. docti hōmīnēs.	bōnae mūliērēs.	grāviā ōnērā.
Ac. doctōs hōmīnēs.	bōnās mūliērēs.	grāviā ōnērā.
G. doctōrum hōmīnum.	bōnārum mūliērum.	grāvium ōnērum.
D. A. doctis hōmīnībūs.	bōnīs mūliērībūs.	grāvībūs ōnērībūs.

Sometimes the gender and number of the adjective or participle 1038 are determined by the sense rather than the form of the substantive, as :

Omnīs aetās currēre obviī, *persons of every age kept running to meet him.*

Cāpitā conjūrātiōnis virgīs caesi ac sēcūrī percussī sunt, *the heads of the conspiracy were flogged and beheaded.*

If a relative or other pronoun referring to a word preceding be 1039 the subject of a sentence which itself contains a predicative substantive, the gender and number of the pronoun are commonly determined by the latter, as :

Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae cāpit est, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

Hic lābōr, hoc ōpūs est, *this is the labour, this the task.*

If an adjective or participle refer to several nouns of different 1040 gender, the gender and number are commonly determined by one of the three rules following :

a. Most commonly the adjective agrees in number and gender with the noun to which it is nearest.

b. If the nouns be living beings, the masculine pl. may be used.

c. If they be things without life, the neuter plural may be used, as :

a. Mens ēt ānīmūs et consīlium et sentiētiā civitātis pōsita est in lēgībūs, *the intellect and soul and forethought and feelings of a state reside in the laws.*

Cingētōrigi principātūs atque impērium est trādītum, *the chief post and the supreme command were handed over to Cingetorix.*

b. Pāter mihi et māter mortuī sunt, *my father and mother are dead.*

c. Lābor vōluptasquē dissimīliā nātūrā, sōciētātē quādam inter sē nātūrālī junctā sunt, *toil and pleasure, unlike as they are in nature, are still joined together in a sort of natural partnership.*

- 1042 Many words which were originally adjectives or participles are at times used as substantives, and as such may have adjectives or genitives attached to them : as,

Vētus vicīnūs, *an old neighbour.*

Inīquissimī mei, *my greatest enemies.*

Summā pectōris, *the highest parts of the breast.*

Summum montīs, *the summit of the mountain.*

Mēdium diēi, *the middle of the day.*

- 1045 A masculine adjective in the plural, without a substantive, is often used of men, and a neuter adjective in the plural of things ; but when the gender is not at once determined by the termination of the adjective, it is commonly better to use a substantive with the adjective, as :

Multis hōmīnībūs or multis rēbūs, *rather than multis alone.*

- 1051 A neuter adjective is often used as an adverb, thus :

Hōdie aut summum crās, *to-day or at farthest to-morrow.*

Dulcē ridentem, *sweetly-laughing.*

- 1052 When substantives signifying agents have one form for the masculine, another for the feminine, they so far take the character of adjectives, that they must agree in number, gender, and case with the word to which they refer, as :

Lex, quāsi dux vitæ et māgistra officiōrum, *the law, which is as it were the guide of life and the instructress in duty.*

Tīmor, non diūturnus māgistēr offici, *fear, no permanent instructor in duty.*

APPOSITION.

- 1058 When one substantive is attached by way of explanation to another, it must agree with it always in case, and generally in number, and when practicable in gender, as :

Duae urbēs pōtentissūmae, Karthāgo atquē Nūmantiā, *two most powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia.*

Dēliciae meae Dīcaearchūs, *my favourite Dicæarchus.*

Omitto illās omnium doctrinārum inventricis Athēnās, *I omit that great inventress of every science, Athens.*

Antē mē consūlem, *before I was consul.*

PRONOUNS.

The nominatives of the personal pronouns are not commonly 1076 used, because the terminations of the verb already express the notion ; but if there be any emphasis, then they are required.

Quis tu es ? *Who are you ?*

Nātūrā tu illi pātēr es, consūlis ēgō, *by nature you are his father, as guardian I.*

Similarly *he, she, it, they*, if emphatic, must be expressed by the 1077 proper pronoun, *i-, ho-, isto-, or illo-* (see below).

The reflective pronouns of the third person, both substantive 1083 and adjective, are variously translated according to the word they refer to. This word is commonly the nominative of the sentence, as :

Eā praeda aliis cōluit, non sibi, *these farms he cultivated for others, not for himself.*

Tum illā rējecit se in eum, *then the other threw herself back into his arms.*

Iustitiā propter se est cōlendā, *justice is to be cultivated for itself.*

Non sui conservandi causā prōfugerunt, *it was not to save themselves that they ran off.*

Suā quae narrat facinorā ? *what doings of his own does he recount ?*

Cōpiās suās dimisit, *he dismissed his forces.*

Aliēnā mēlius dīiudicant quam suā, *they judge better of other people's affairs than their own.*

Se and *suo-* in a secondary sentence may of course refer to the 1084 nominative or subject of that secondary sentence. They sometimes however refer to the agent of the main sentence, particularly if the secondary sentence express what is in the mind of that agent, as :

Orāvit mē pāter ūt ad sē vēnīrem, *the father asked me to come to him.*

Accusāt āmīcos quod sē non adjuvērīnt, *he accuses his friends for not having assisted him.*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

- 1091 *Ho-, isto-, illo-*, are called demonstratives, because the speaker in using them often points to the things he speaks of.

Ho- is the demonstrative of the first person, and points to what is *near me*.

Isto- is the demonstrative of the second person, and points to what is *near you*.

Illo- is the demonstrative of the third person, and points to what is *distant* from both of us.

- 1092 *Ho-, this*, has the following uses: First, it points to something near the speaker, as:

Sed quid hoc? Puer hercle'st. Mūlier, tu adpōsuisti hunc?
But what is this (at my feet)? Faith, it's a baby. Woman, was it you who placed this baby here?

Hic versus Plauti nōn est, hic est, *this verse is not Plautus's, this is.*

- 1094 Secondly, *ho-* refers to present time, as:

Ab illis hōmīnībūs ad hanc hōmīnum lūbīdīnem ac līcentiam
me abdūcis? *do you propose to draw me away from the men
of those days to the self-indulgence and intemperance that now
prevail?*

- 1095 *Ho-* may also be used logically, *i.e.* referring to the mere words of a sentence, as:

Quam quisque norit ārtē, in hac se exerceat, *whatever art each
knows, in this let him exercise himself.*

Quōrum opērum haec erat rātiō, *of these works the following was
the plan.*

- 1098 *Isto-, that* (connected with 'you'), points or refers to something near the person spoken to, as:

Istam quam hābes unde hābes vestem? *that dress which you
have got on, where did you get it from?*

S. Hōcīne āgīs annōn ? D. Egō vērō istuc. S. *Do you attend to what I am saying or not ?* D. *Yes, sir, I do attend to what you say.*

Illo-, yonder, distant, former, other, points to something comparatively distant, as :

Aufēr illam pātīnam, *take away yonder dish.*

'Ille suam semper ēgit vitam in ōtio, *my brother there has always passed his time in idleness.*

Illo-, like ho-, may be used logically ; that is, refer to the words of a sentence. When they are used together, ho- refers to the nearer word, illo- to the farther, as :

Mēlius dē quībusdam ācerbi īnīmīcī mērentur quam īi āmīcī quī dulces videntūr. Illi saepē vērūm dicunt ; hī, nunquam. *Bitter enemies deserve better of some persons than those friends who seem to be all sweetness. The former often speak the truth ; the latter, never.*

A change of person is often marked by illo-, in which case the word *other* is often the best translation, as :

Vercingetōrix obviam Caesārī prōfēciscītūr. Ille oppīdum Novīdūnum obpugnāre īnstitūerat. *Vercingetorix sets out to meet Cæsar. The other (viz. Cæsar) had begun to besiege Noviodunum.*

Aeolus luctantis ventōs impēriō prēmīt. Illi circum claustrā frēmunt. *Æolus the struggling winds with sovereign sway restrains. They thus restrained around the barriers murmur.*

Illo- also introduces something about to be mentioned, as : 1106

Hōrum ēgō sermōnē non mōvēbār. Illud, vērē dicam, mē mōvēt, ābessē trīs cōhortīs. *By what these men said to one another I was not annoyed. One thing however (I will be candid with you) does annoy me, and that is this, that three battalions are absent.*

Illo- expresses distance in time, past or future : first past time, as :

Quīd ille, ūbi est Milēsīus ? *well, and that gentleman from Miletus you were speaking of, where is he ?*

LOGICAL PRONOUNS.—1. i-, eo-, &c.

I-, eo-, &c., *this, that, the, he, she, it*, is never a demonstra- 1112

tive, and consequently it never takes the enclitic *cē*; it always refers to some word or words in the context.

- 1113 Commonly it refers to a word preceding, as :
Euntī mihi Antium, vēnīt obviam tuus puēr. Is mihi littērās abs tē reddidit. As I was going to Antium, there came across me your servant. This servant (or he) gave me a letter from you.

Unam rem explicābo eamque maxīmā, one thing I will explain, and that the most important.

- 1114 It also refers to what follows, as :
Id tibi affirmo te in istis mōlestiis non diūtius fūtūrum, this I assure you of, that you will not be long in your present painful situation there.

- 1115 It is often used as an antecedent to a relative, thus :
Eā quae sēcuta est hiēmē, in the winter which followed.

- 1116 When the relative clause contains a reason, the pronoun should be omitted in the translation, or the words *a, one, a man*, may be used, as :

Minimū convēnīt ex eo agrō qui Caesāris jussū dividātūr, eum mōvēri qui Caesāris bēnificiō sēnātor sit, it is altogether inconsistent that a man who is a senator by Caesar's favour should be ejected from land which is in course of distribution under Caesar's order.

- 1118 It is used before a relative or *ūt*, in such a manner as to denote the belonging to a class, and is to be translated by *such, the sort of person, one of those, the man to —*, thus :

Nēquē tu īs es qui quid sis nesciās, nor are you the person not to know what you are.

In eum res rēdiit jam lōcum, ut sit nēcessum, matters are at last come to such a state that it is necessary.

2. *Qui-, quo-, &c.*

- 1120 The relative *qui*- agrees like other adjectives with its noun if expressed, as :

Intellexit diem instārē quō diē frūmentum mētiri oportēret, he saw that the day was close at hand, on which day it was required that he should measure out the corn.

Causam dicit eā lēgē quā lēgē sēnātōrēs sōli tēnentūr, he is

making his defence under a law by which law senators alone are bound.

In the sentences just given the noun is expressed twice over. 1121 This repetition is unnecessary ; and commonly the noun which should accompany the relative is omitted, so that the relative agrees with the antecedent noun in number and gender, but has its case determined by its own clause, as :

Ab reliquis principibus qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant, *by the other chiefs who thought that this risk ought not to be run.*

Inromissis equitibus, quos arcessendos curaverat, *horsemen having been let into the place, whom he had sent for.*

Adeunt per Aeduos quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas, *they make their approach by means of the Aedui under whose protection the state had been from of old.*

Quid vos hanc miseram sectamini praedam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis ? *why do you pursue this wretched booty, you who have it in your power now to be the most fortunate of men ?*

Adversarios suos a quibus erat paulo ante ejectus, *his opponents by whom he had been a little before expelled.*

A very common construction consists of the relative and its so- 1123 called antecedent divided by the other words of the relative clause, as :

Habetis quam petistis facultatem, *you have now the opportunity you sought.*

Ad eas quas diximus munitiones, *to the fortifications which we have mentioned.*

An antecedent is not always necessary, as : 1126

Nec erat quod scriberem, *nor was there any thing to write.*

Asséquere quod vis, *you will obtain what you wish.*

Habebis cui des litteras, *you will have some one to send a letter by.*

Bene est cui Deus obtulit parcam quod satis est manu, *'tis well with him to whom the Deity has offered with frugal hand what is enough.*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The use of the interrogative pronouns, qui-, utero-, &c., falls 1134

under the two heads of direct* and indirect questions, the former having commonly the indicative, the latter nearly always the subjunctive: as,

Direct questions :

Quis tu es? *who are you?*

Quid igitur sibi volt pater? *what does my father mean then?*

Indirect questions :

Quid retineat per te meminit, non quid amisserit, *he remembers what he retains through you, not what he has lost.*

Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit, *what sort of a thing the soul is, the soul itself knows not.*

VERB.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1152 The indicative is employed in affirming, denying, and asking questions. The chief uses of this mood and its several tenses have been already stated. Moreover, it is evidently sufficient to point out the cases where the other moods are required. Hence all further remark upon the indicative is nearly superfluous. However, it may still be useful to draw special attention to a case where error is not uncommon.

1153 Conditional sentences may be divided into two general heads :
 1. those which put an imaginary case, the non-existence of which is implied in the very terms, and which are here called hypothetical, such as, 'If he were here, he would tell us,' or 'If I had been ill, I should have consulted the physician;' in which cases it is clearly implied that the person spoken of is *not* present, that 'I am *not* ill.'
 2. Those suppositions which may be the fact or not, so far as the speaker professes to know, as, 'If I receive the letter, I will

* In the direct question the English language puts the nominative after the verb or its auxiliary, except indeed when the question is about the nominative itself and begins with 'who.' Secondly, an interrogative pronoun or particle commences the sentence, unless indeed the question be about the act itself, in which case the verb or its auxiliary comes first. Thirdly, the mark of interrogation (?) is placed at the end of the sentence. On the other hand, the indirect interrogative is always attached to some word or phrase, generally to a verb. Secondly, the nominative, as in ordinary sentences, always precedes its verb. Thirdly, it is not entitled to the mark of interrogation.

forward it.' This distinction being understood, it may be stated that conditional sentences of this second class have nearly always the indicative in Latin in both clauses, although the English language may have the subjunctive, thus :

Erras si id crēdis, you are mistaken if you believe that.

Perficietur bellum, si urgēmūs obsessōs, the war will be finished, if we press the besieged.

IMPERATIVE.

1163

The future, whose forms end in *to*, is chiefly used in laws and wills, as :

Divis omnibus pontifices, singulis flāmines suntō, for the gods in general there shall be a college of pontifices, each separate god shall have his flamen.

Filius mihi hērēs estō, my son shall be my heir.

This tense is also used generally in reference to future time, if that time be fixed by any condition or otherwise, as :

Ubi nōs lāverimus, si voles lavāto, when we have bathed, bathe if you will.

Quoquo hīc spectabit, eō tu spectātō simul ;

Si quo hīc gradietur, pāriter progredimino.

Where'er he looks, thither must you look with him ;

Where'er he marches, march you too forward by his side.

The present is used in a less authoritative manner, and is applied both to the immediate occasion and to general directions :

Mihi crēde, take my word for it.

Cāvē sis, be on your guard, if you please.

The present of the subjunctive mood is often used as a *jussive* : as,

Ecfērant quae sēcum hūc attūlērunt, let them bring out what they brought here with them.

SUBJUNCTIVE.*

The subjunctive is used where a proposition is put forward, not as a fact, but as a conception to be spoken of. Hence it is used in

* The chief uses of the subjunctive have already been briefly pointed out in §§ 594-624.

secondary clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a conjunction, or relative, or interrogative : 1st, where an object or result is expressed ; 2d, where the assertions or thoughts of another than the speaker are stated ; 3d, where that which does not exist is imagined, &c. But it will be practically more useful to deal with the separate cases.

- 1179 The *object** or *purpose* of an action may be expressed by an imperfect of the subjunctive, and the conjunctions *ūt*, *quō*, and the relative ; or if the object be prevention, by *ut nē*, *nē*, *quōmīnūs*, and *quīn*, as :

Alii nōcent, ūt in ālios libērāles sint, they injure some, that they may be generous to others.

Obducuntur corticē truncī quō sint ā frigōribus tūtiorēs, the trunk of a tree is sheathed with bark, that it may be safer from the cold.

Verbā rēpertā sunt quae indicārent vōluntātem, words were invented to indicate the will.

Gallinae pullos pennis fōvent nē frīgōrē laedantūr, hens keep their chickens warm with their wings, that they may not be hurt by the cold.

- 1180 Hence verbs of *commanding*, *advising*, *begging*, *wishing*, *compelling*, *preventing*, *permitting*, are followed by an imperfect of the subjunctive, and *ūt*, or the negatives, *ut nē*, *nē*, *quōmīnūs*, *quīn*.

- 1181 Not unfrequently the *ūt* is omitted before the subjunctive : as,
Sīnē me expurgem, allow me to clear myself.

But verbs of *wishing*, and also *prohibe-*, *impēra-*, *sīn-*, *jūbe-*, *pāti-(r.)*, and *vēta-*, are also found with the accusative and infinitive, especially the passive infinitive ; and indeed the last three of these six verbs are but rarely found with *ūt*.

- 1182 The *result* is expressed by the subjunctive, as :
Accidit ut prīmus nuntiāret, it happened that he was the first to bring word.

- 1183 With phrases which denote *hindrance*, *opposition*, *avoiding*, *omission*, *doubt*, the subjunctive is preceded by *nē*, *quōmīnūs* or *quīn*, but by the last, only in case there be with the main verb a negative to express the non-existence of the hindrance, as :

• See §§ 599, 607.

Impēdior dōlōre ānīmī nē plūrā dicam, *I am prevented by indignation from saying more.*

Per mē stētīt quōmīnūs hae fīerēt nuptiae, *it was my fault that this marriage did not take place.*

Nēque ābest suspīcio quīn ipsē sībī mortem conscīvērit, *nor is there wanting a suspicion that he was the author of his own death.*

Verbs, &c. of fearing have the subjunctive, with nē if the object be not desired, with ūt if it be desired, as :

Vēreor ne hoc serpat longiūs, *I fear that this will creep further.*

Ornāmentā mētuo ut possim rēcīpērē, *the ornaments I am afraid I shall not be able to recover.*

In indefinite expressions the relative preceded by a verb signifying existence is followed by a subjunctive : as,

Sunt quī censeant, *there are persons who think.*

Quīs est quin cernat? *who is there who does not see?*

Fuit antea tempus quum Germānos Galli virtūtē supērarent, *there was formerly a time when the Germans were surpassed in valour by the Galli.*

After digno-, idōneo-, apto-, ūno-, sōlo-, prīmo-, &c., what is necessary to complete the predicate is expressed by the relative or ūt with the subjunctive : as,

Idōneus nōn est quī impētret, *he is not a fit person to obtain his respect.*

Sōlūs es, Caesar, cūjūs in victoriā cēcīdērīt nēmō nīsi armātūs, *you are the only conqueror, Caesar, in whose victory no one fell unless armed.*

After comparatives, quam quī or quam ūt is followed by the subjunctive, as :

Mājus gaudium erat quam quōd hōmīnes cāpērent, *the joy was too great for human beings to contain.*

Clārīor rēs erat quam ut tēgī possēt, *the matter was too notorious to be concealed.*

An assertion is limited and explained by qui- and the subjunctive, as :

Peccassē mihi vīdeor qui ā tē discessērīm, *I think I did wrong in leaving you.*

Sātīn sātūs es quī id rōgītēs? *are you quite in your senses to ask that?*

- 1196 In *indirect questions*, *i. e.* where an interrogative pronoun or conjunction and verb are attached to some verb or phrase, the verb following the interrogative is in the subjunctive, as :

Nātūrā declārat quid vēlit, *nature tells us in clear language what she wishes.*

Ignōrābat rex ūtēr eōrum esset Orestēs, *the king knew not which of the two was Orestes.*

Discent quemadmōdum haec fiant, *they will learn how these things are done.*

Dūbito an Vēnūsiam tendam, *I am at a loss whether to make for Venusia.*

- 1201 When the words or thoughts of another are reported and not in the first person, it is called the *obliqua oratio* or *reported speech*, and all secondary clauses, that is, clauses dependent upon the relative or upon conjunctions, are in the subjunctive mood. Compare the following passages :

Sēnātū reīquē publicāe ēgō non dēŕō, si audacter sententias dicērē vultis ; sin Caesārem respiciētis atque ejus grātiā sequimīnī, ut sup̄eriōribus fēcistis tempōribus, ēgō mihi consilium cāpiam, nēquē sēnātūs auctōritāti obtemp̄rābō.* *I will not be wanting to the senate and the country, if you are willing to express your opinions boldly ; but if you look to Caesar, and make his favour your object, as you have done on recent occasions, then I will take my measures for myself, and will not be guided by the authority of the senate.*

Sēnātū reīque publicāe sē non defūtūrum pollicētur, si audacter sententias dicērē vēlint ; sin Caesārem respiciant atque ejus grātiā sequantūr, ut sup̄eriōribus fēcērint tempōribus, sē sibi consilium captūrum, nēquē sēnātūs auctōritāti obtemp̄rātūrum. *He promises that he will not be wanting, &c.*

- 1202 Or the tenses might be thrown into past time (which is more commonly used), by writing pollicēbātūr or pollicītūs est, vellent, respicērent, sequērentūr, fēcissent.
- 1205 Without a formal use of the *obliqua oratio*, a verb in a dependent clause may be in the subjunctive mood when it expresses the thoughts or words or alleged reasons of another.

Aristīdēs ōb eam causam expulsus est patriā, quod praeter

* See Caesar, B. C. i. c. 1.

mōdum justūs esset, *Aristides was driven from his country on the ground that he was just beyond measure.*

Fābiō dictā diēs est, quod lēgātūs in Gallos pugnasset, *notice of trial was given to Fabius, for having fought against the Galli when ambassador.*

In these cases the power of the subjunctive may be expressed 1206 by inserting such words as *they said* or *they thought*: for example, in the last sentence but one the English might have been: 'because he was just *they said*, beyond measure.'

Another example of the subjunctive employed in speaking of 1209 what does not exist, is seen in *hypothetical** sentences, both in the clause of condition and the clause of consequence.

Tū si hic sīs, ālīter sentiās, *if you were in my situation, you would feel differently.*

Si frātēr esset, qui māgis mōrem gēreret? *if he had been a brother, how would he have been more obliging?*

Si hās īnīmīcītiās cāvērē pōtuisset, vīvēret, *if he had been able to guard against the enmity of this party, he would have been now living.*

Quum in clauses signifying a reason for or against any thing is 1229 followed by a subjunctive, as:

Quum vitā sine āmicīs mētūs plēnā sit, rātio ipsā mōnet āmīcītiās compārārē, *since life without friends is full of danger, reason itself suggests the forming friendships.*

Quum multae mihi insīdiae factae sint, nunquam tāmen tantōpērē pertīmui ut nunc, *although many conspiracies have been formed against me, yet I was never so thoroughly alarmed as now.*

Quae quum itā sint, *this being the case.*

Quum as an adverb of time is translated with the imperfect of 1230 the subjunctive as *while*, with the past perfect of the subjunctive as *after*, as:

Quum ācerrīmē pugnārētur, sūbītō sunt Aedui vīsi ab lātērē nostrīs āpertō, *as the battle was proceeding with the greatest spirit, there suddenly appeared a body of Aedui on the exposed† flank of our men.*

* See above, § 1153.

† i. e. the right, which had no shields to protect them.

Quum dies complures transissent, subitō pēr explorātōres certior factus est, *after many days had already passed by, he was suddenly informed by his scouts.*

INFINITIVE.

- 1232 The infinitive is a neuter substantive which denotes generally the action or state expressed by the verb. Its use as a noun is for the most part limited to the nominative and accusative cases, as :

Docto hōmīni vivere est cōgītārē, *with an educated man to live is to think.*

Invidērē non cādīt in sapiētem, *envy affects not the wise man.*

Stoici irasci nesciunt, *the Stoic knows not anger.*

- 1235 The most common use of the infinitive is as the object of active verbs, particularly those which signify *wish, power, duty, habit, knowledge, inclination, intention, commencement, continuance, cessation*, as :

Artēriæ micārē non dēsīnunt, *the arteries never leave off throbbing.*

Intuērī sōlem advorsum nēquīmūs, *we cannot gaze directly upon the sun.*

Oblitus sum tibi hoc dicērē, *I forgot to tell you this.*

Vincērē scīs, victōria ūtī nescīs, *you know how to gain a victory, you know not how to use a victory.*

- 1236 Some verbs besides an accusative of the person take a second accusative of the *thing* expressed by an infinitive : as, dōce-,* *teach*; jūbe-, *bid*; vēta-, *forbid*; sīn-, *permit*; cōg-, *compel*; mōne-, *advise*; horta- (r.), *encourage*; impēdi-, *hinder*; prohibē-, *prevent*, &c. Thus :

Dōcēbo eum posthac tēcērē, *I will teach him to be silent for the future.*

Hērus mē jussit Pamphīlum observārē, *master has ordered me to keep an eye upon Pamphilus.*

Lēgātōs āb ōpērē discēdērē vētuērāt, *he had forbidden the lieutenants to leave the work.*

Quid me impēdit haec prōbārē? *what prevents my approving of these things?*

* All these verbs, except the first two or three, are also found with a subjunctive following.

After the passive too of many of the verbs given in the preceding section the infinitive is used, the accusative of the preceding construction becoming now the nominative, as :

Consulēs jūbentur scribere exercitum, *the consuls are directed to enrol an army.*

Mūrōs ādirē vētītī sunt, *they were forbidden to approach the walls.*

Verbs of *saying, hearing, feeling, thinking, knowing*, are followed by an accusative and infinitive, as :

Thālēs āquam dixit esse īnitium rērum, *Thales said that water was the beginning of things.*

Audit nōs vēnīrē, *he heard that we were coming.*

Scribit confectum esse bellum, *he writes word that the war is finished.*

Spēro nostram āmicītiām nōn ēgērē testībūs, *I hope that our friendship needs not witnesses.*

Tibi eōs scio obtempērātūrōs māgīs, *I know that they will more readily comply with your wishes.*

The verbs which express the *emotions* of the mind are followed by an accusative and infinitive to express the cause of the emotion, as :

Haec perfecta essē gaudeo, *I am delighted that these matters are settled.*

Tantum se ējūs ōpiniōnis dēperdīdissē dōlēbant, *they were hurt that they had lost so much of their reputation in this respect.*

A predicate consisting of a neuter adjective, or a substantive, or an impersonal verb, is accompanied by the accusative and infinitive : as,

Nōn est rectum mīnōrī pārērē mājōrem, *it is not fitting that the superior should obey the inferior.*

Fācīnūs est civem Rōmānum vincīrī, *it is a serious matter for a Roman citizen to be bound.*

In narrative the infinitive is at times used as the main verb with the power of the past-imperfect of the indicative (and when so used is called the *historic infinitive*), as :

Consulem anceps cūra āgītārē; nollē dēsērērē sōciōs, nollē mīnuērē exercitum, *a twofold anxiety troubled the consul; he was unwilling to abandon the allies, he was unwilling to diminish the army.*

Ego instāre ut mihi respondēret, quis esset, *I meanwhile kept pressing him to tell me who he was.*

- 1259 In the compound tenses of the infinitive, both active and passive, the verb *esse* is often omitted, as :

Dēnēgārat sē commissūrum mihi gnātam suam uxōrem, *he had declared that he would not trust his daughter in marriage to me.*

Haut dices tibi non praedictum, *you will not say that no notice was given to you.*

PARTICIPLES AND VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

- 1264 Participles are partly like adjectives, partly like verbs. Like adjectives they agree with some noun in case, gender, and number. On the other hand they are derived from verbs, denote an act, and govern the same case as the verb from which they are derived. The tense or time of a participle depends upon the verb which it accompanies.

- 1281 As the Latin language is for the most part without a participle for the perfect active, the following circumlocutions are in use.

a. The ablative absolute, as :

Hac partē cōpiarum aucta Itērum cum Sābīnis configit̃r, *having increased this part of his forces, he engages again with the Sabines.*

b. Quum with the past-perfect subjunctive, or ūbi with the simple perfect or present indicative : as,

Quum ab sēdē suā prōstluisset amōverique āb altārībus iuvēnem jussisset, *having lept down from his seat and ordered the young man to be moved away from the altars.*

Ubi eō vēnit, prōpē rēgium trībūnal constitit, *having arrived there, he posted himself near the king's tribunal.*

c. An accusative of the perfect passive participle dependent upon the main verb, as :

Gallum caesum* torquē spōliāvit, *having slain the Gaul, he stripped him of his golden collar.*

d. Occasionally, a reflective verb supplies a literal translation, as :

* Often a better translation is effected by two verbs, as : 'he slew him and stripped him,' &c.

Consēcūtūs id quōd ānīmō prōpōsuērat, rēceptuī cānī iussit,
*having obtained what he had proposed to himself, he ordered
 the signal for retreat to be sounded.*

Omniā quae dīco dē Planciō, dīco expertūs in nōbīs, *all that I
 say about Plancius, I say having had trial of him in my own
 family.*

The gerund is a neuter verbal substantive, used in all the five 1284 cases, as :

Nom. Jūvēnī pārandum, sēni ūtendum est, *earning belongs to the
 young, using to the old man.*

Acc. Hōmo ad intellēgendum nātūs est, *man is born to understand.
 Intēr āgendum, while driving.*

Gen. Deus bōvem ārandī causā fēcīt, *God made the ox for the pur-
 pose of ploughing.*

Dat. Tēlum fōdiendo ācūmīnātum, *a weapon pointed for digging.*

Abl. Virtūtēs cernuntūr in āgendō, *the manly virtues are seen in
 action.*

The gerund is followed by the same case as the verb to which 1285 it belongs, as :

Hanc viam nōbīs quōque ingrēdiendum est, *this road we also
 have to travel.*

Suō cuiquē jūdīcio ūtendum est, *each must use his own judgment.*

Diālectīca est ars vērā ac falsā dījūdīcandī, *logic is the art of
 judging between truth and falsehood.*

The gerund, as a substantive, may have a genitive after it (but 1286 this usage is limited to the genitive of the gerund), as :

Rējīciundī trium jūdīcum lēgēs Cornēliae faciunt pōtēstatē,
the Cornelian laws give the right of challenging three jurymen.

Sui purgandī causā, *for the sake of clearing themselves.*

Gerundive Construction.

When a noun in the accusative would accompany the gerund, 1287 the construction is commonly altered so that this noun takes the case of the gerund, and the gerund, changed to the participle, takes the number and gender of the noun, as :

Diligentiā cōlenda est nōbīs, *we must cultivate a habit of pre-
 cision.*

Conjungo mē cum hōmīnē māgīs ad vastandam Itāliam quam
 ad vincendum pārātō, *I am uniting myself with a man who*

is more prepared for devastating Italy than concluding the war victoriously.

Nēquē rēs ullā quae ad plācandōs deōs pertīnēret praetermissa est, *nor was any thing omitted which was thought likely to appease the gods.*

Inītiā sunt consilia urbis dēlendae, civium trucidandōrum, nōmīnis Rōmāni extinguenti, *plans were formed for destroying the city, butchering the citizens, extinguishing the Roman nation.*

- 1288 The two constructions of the neuter gerund with a noun dependent upon it and the gerundive construction are not to be used indifferently. The construction with the gerund belongs to the older writers, but still maintained its ground in certain phrases. In those which are commonly considered the best writers, the gerundive construction was for the most part preferred. Indeed, when the phrase is attached to a preposition governing the accusative, the gerundive construction is adopted almost without exception.

- 1289 The use of the participle with the accusative is very common after the verbs, lōca-, condūc-, cūra-, rēdīm-, da-, suscip-, &c., as :
Mōnūmentum ei marmōreum faciendum lōcārunt, *they placed the making a marble monument in his hands, i. e. they contracted with him that he should build the monument.*
Cōlumnā conduxerat faciendam, *he had undertaken the erection of a pillar, or he had contracted to erect.*
Pontem in Arārī faciendum cūrat, *he has a bridge built over the Arar.*

- 1291 This construction is used with impēra-, the participle being always omitted, as :

Equitēs impērat civitātibūs (*i. e. cōgendos understood*), *he imposes upon the states the providing horse-soldiers, or he commands them to provide him with cavalry.*

- 1295 In the construction of the participle in *endo* with the verb ēs-, *be*, in the sense of duty, the dative of the person in fact belongs to the verb ēs- rather than to the participle.*

* So, in such a phrase as *lēgiōnem in Mōrīnos dūcendam Fābiō dedit*, the dative *Fābio* is dependent not upon *dūcendam*, but upon *dedit*; and again, the accusative after *dedit* is not *lēgiōnem*, but *lēgiōnem dūcendam*, 'the duty of conducting the legion.'

The frequent use of the participle in *endo* with *ēs*-, *be*, in the 1296 sense of *duty* or *fitness* led the mind at last to attach the notion of duty to the participle itself, so that the latter is at times used as an equivalent of an adjective in *bili*. Thus :

Philōsōphiā laudandārum omnium artium prōcreātrix, *philosophy the parent of every praiseworthy accomplishment.*

The verbal substantive in *tu* is used in the accusative after 1299 verbs of motion to denote the object, as :

Ad Caesārem grātulātum vēnērunt, *they came to Caesar to congratulate him.*

Quinquē cōhortis frūmentātum misit, *he sent five cohorts to get corn.*

Id rescitum iri crēdit, *he believes that people are going to find it out, or he believes that it will be found out.*

It governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived, 1300 as :

Orātōres pācem pētītum mittunt, *they send ambassadors to seek peace.*

Lēgātōs mittunt rōgātum auxiliū, *they send ambassadors to ask aid.*

The verbal substantive in *tu* is used in the ablative with certain 1301 adjectives, see § 997.

PREPOSITIONS.

Ab (or ā before some consonants) signifies : 1303

a. The quarter at or near which, expressed by *at*, *in*, *on*, *by*, as :

A fronte ēt ab sinistrā partē nūdātis castris, *the camp being laid bare in front and on the left.*

Gallia ab Sēquānis adtingit Rhēnum, *Gallia where the Sequani live reaches to the Rhine.*

f. From, the point of departure, as :

Ab Rōmā lēgātī vēnērunt, *ambassadors came from Rome.*

Caedis initium ā mē fecit, *he made a beginning of the massacre with me.*

Ab hōrā septimā ad vespērum pugnātum est, *the battle continued from one o'clock in the afternoon until evening.*

l. With personal pronouns and the names of persons, *from their house*, as :

Unde est ? A nobis, *where did it come from ? From our house.*

n. The *agent* with passive verbs, expressed by the preposition *by*, as :

Ab sociis unicē diligēbātūr, *he was most highly esteemed by his colleagues.*

Libēris suis ā servo interfectis, *his children having been killed by a slave.*

p. Removal, separation, distance, expressed commonly by *from*, as :

Ab delectātiōnē omni nēgōtiis impēdimūr, *we are prevented from taking any amusement by business.*

Miliā passuum tria āb eōrum castris castrā pōnit, *he pitches his camp three miles from their camp.*

1304 In composition with verbs āb denotes *removal, disappearance, absence*, as : aufēr-, *carry away* ; ābūt- (r.), *use up* ; ābēs-, *be absent.*

In composition with adjectives āb denotes *absence, difference*, as : āmenti- or āment-, *without mind, mad* ; absōno-, *out of tune or time.*

1305 Ad signifies—*a. Motion to* (i. e. *up to, not into*), as :

Exercitum ad Cāsīlinum dūcīt, *he leads his army to (the walls of) Casilinum.*

Mūnitiōnem ad flūmen perduxerat, *he had carried the fortification to the (bank of the) river.*

b. *To what time*, as :

Ad id dūbiōs servārant ānīmōs, *up to that time they had kept their minds in a state of doubt.*

c. *To what extent*, as :

Omnēs ād ūnum idem sentiunt, *they have all to a man the same feeling.*

Servi ad quattuor milia hōmīnum Cāpitōlium occūpāverē, *the slaves to the number of 4000 men seized the Capitol.*

d. *Direction, to, towards*, as :

Viā ad Cāsīlinum obsessā, *the road to Casilinum being occupied by the enemy.*

Vergīt ad septemtriōnēs, *it inclines to the north.*

e. *Purpose, for*, as :

Pēcūniae ad lūdōs dēcernuntūr, *money is voted for the games.*

Pālūs Rōmānōs ād insēquendum tardābat, *the marsh made the Romans slow to pursue.*

h. In addition to, as :

Ad ceterā vulnerā hanc quōquē plāgam inflixerat, *in addition to the other wounds he had inflicted this blow also.*

i. By, of future time, as :

Nōs hic te ad mensem Jānuārium expectāmus, *we expect to see you here by the month of January.*

j. Near, before, off, to, over (all in the sense of nearness), as :

Ad Geronium constitērat bellum, *before Geronium the war had come to a standstill.*

Classi ād Ostiam stantī praeerat, *he commanded the fleet stationed off Ostia.*

k. In comparison to, by the side of, as :

Nihil ad nostram hanc, *nothing to this one of ours.*

l. In accordance with, after, as :

Cātō vitam ad certam rātiōnis normam dirigit, *Cato shapes his life by the strict square of reason.*

n. Immediately upon, in consequence of, at, as :

Ad fāmam obsidiōnis dēlectūs hāberi coeptus est, *at the report of a siege, a levy of troops was commenced.*

o. Before a personal pronoun or proper name, to the house of the person, as :

Magnī dōmum concursus ād Afrānium fiēbant, *great crowds kept flocking to the house of Afranius.*

Dēvertit Clōdius ad sē, *Clodius turns out of the road to his own house.*

Ad in composition with verbs denotes—*a. motion to, as: acced-, 1306 step up to; ascend-, climb after. b. addition, as: acced-, be added; ascrib-, enroll with. c. nearness, as: asside-, sit near; adjace-, lie near. d. assent, favour, as: annu-, nod assent; arride-, smile on; acclāma-, express assent by acclamation, cheer. e. repetition and hence intensity, as: accid-, cut deeply into; attēr-, rub a deep hole in. f. at, in consequence of, as: arrig-, raise (on hearing or seeing any thing).*

Apud (āpūt) is for the most part limited to persons. It denotes: 1311

a. Near, with places (rarely), as :

Apud oppidum Cybistrā castrā fēcī, *I encamped near the town Cybistra.*

b. Near, with persons, as :

In lectō Crassus erat, ēt āpud eum Sulpicius sēdebāt, *Crassus was on the couch, and near him Sulpicius was sitting.*

Apud exercitum est, *he is with the army.*

c. *At the house of a person, even though he be away, as :*

Brutum apud me fuissē gaudeo, *I rejoice (to hear) that Brutus has been at my house.*

e. *In the time of, as :*

Apud patres nostros, *among our fathers, i. e. in the times of our fathers.*

f. *In the mind, as :*

Praemia apud me minūm valent, *rewards with me have very little weight.*

g. *In authors, as :*

Ut ille apud Terentium, *like that man in Terence.*

- 1312 Ar (of the same meaning as ād), rarely if ever used except in composition, and then it signifies—*a. to, as : arcess- and arci-, call to (you), send for ; arvōca-, call to. b. presence, as : arfu-, be present (whence arfuit).*

- 1322 Cum. *a. With, chiefly in the case of persons, as :*

Vāgāmūr ēgentēs cum conjūgibus et libēris, *we wander about in a state of destitution with our wives and children.*

Tēcum essē vehēmenter vēlim, *I should be most delighted to be with you.*

i. *With, in the sense of against, with verbs denoting contest, as :*

Hannibal de impēriō cum pōpulo Rōmānō certāvit, *Hannibal contended for empire with the Roman people.*

- 1323 Cum or cōn in composition with verbs signifies—*a. union, as : concurr-, run together ; co-i-, meet ; consūl- (sit together), deliberate. b. completeness (in the way of destruction), as : comēd-, eat up ; com-bur-, burn up. c. completeness (in the way of success), as : confic- or confici-, make up ; consēqu- (r.), overtake, obtain. d. with a great effort, as : cōnīc- or conjic-, hurl ; conclāma-, cry out loudly. e. in harmony, as : consōna-, accord ; consenti-, agree (in feeling). f. the same as be in English, changing the construction of the verb, as : constern-, bestrew or pave ; collīn-, besmear.*

- 1324 Cum or cōn in adjectives denotes *union*, as : consciō-, *sharing knowledge ; commūni-, shared in common.*

- 1325 Cum or cōn with substantives denotes *fellow*, as : conservo-, *fellow-slave.*

Dē. *a. Down, down from, as :*

1326

Ruunt dē montibūs amnēs, *the rivers rush down the mountains.*
Clīpea dē cōlumnis demsit, *he took the shields down from the pillars.*

b. The source from which, as :

Hoc audīvī dē patrē, *this I heard from my father.*

c. Part of, one or more of, as :

Dē tuis innūmērābīlībūs in me officiis, ērīt hoc grātissimūm,
of your innumerable kindnesses to me, this will be the most welcome.

d. The material of which any thing is made, as :

Sibi fēcit pōcūlā dē lūtō, *he made himself cups of clay.*

e. Motives, causes, suggestions, variously translated, as by under, for, on, &c., as :

Iustis dē causis rātiōnes dēferrē prōpērāvi, *for good reasons I made haste to give in my accounts.*

Quōrūm dē sententiā tōtā rēs gesta est, *under whose advice the whole matter was conducted.*

f. Of, concerning, about, over, as :

Nihil dico dē meo ingēniō, *I say nothing of my own abilities.*

Rēgūlus dē captivis commūtandis Rōmam missus est, *Regulus was sent to Rome about an exchange of prisoners.*

Afrīcānus dē Nūmantinis triumphāverat, *Africanus had triumphed over the people of Numantia.*

g. With words of time, in the course of, by, as :

Coepērunt epulārī dē diē, *they began the banqueting by daylight.*

Dē tertiā vigiliā exercitum rēduxit, *in the course of the third watch he led back the army.*

Dē in composition with verbs denotes—*a. down, as :* dēm- (for 1327 de-īm-), *take down ; dēmitt-, let down. b. removal, as :* dētonde-, *shear. c. absence, as :* dēs- or deēs-, *be wanting ; dēbe- (for dehībe-), owe. d. prevention, as :* dehorta- (r.), *dissuade. e. unfriendly feeling, as :* despīc- or despīci-, *despise ; dēride-, laugh at.*

Dē with adjectives denotes—*a. down, as :* dēclīvi-, *sloping down-* 1328 *wards. b. absence, as :* dēmenti- or dēment-, *without mind, mad.*

Dī or dīs (dīr) is used only in composition. With verbs it de- 1329 notes—*a. division, as :* dīvid-, *divide ; dīlāb- (r.), slip away in different directions. b. difference, as :* discrēpa-, *sound a different note ; dissenti-, disagree. c. the reverse of the simple notion, as :*

displace-, *displease*; diffid-, *distrust*. *d. intensity*, as: dilauda-, *bepraise*.

- 1330 Dis in the composition of adjectives denotes—*a. difference*, as: discolor-, *of different colour or colours*; discord-, *sounding a different note*.

- 1331 [Ec], ē, ex, may be looked upon as the opposite to in, just as ab in its ordinary senses is to ad. It denotes—*a. out of (with motion)*, as:

Tēlum ē corpore extraxit, *he drew the weapon out of the body*.

Eum exturbasti ex aedibūs, *this man you bundled out of the house*.

b. Off, i. e. from on, as:

Ex equis desiliunt, *they leap off their horses*.

c. On, from, when a person is in or on a place and directs his efforts thence, as:

Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare vīsi, *Castor and Pollux were seen fighting on horseback*.

Contionari ex altā turri solēbat, *he was wont to harangue the people from a high tower*.

d. The material of which any thing is made, of, as:

Stātua ex aerē factā, *a statue made of bronze*.

e. A change from one character to another, from, as:

Quaero ex tē sisnē pauperrimō dives factūs, *I ask you whether or no from being very poor you have become rich*.

g. Of, signifying part of, preceding the whole, as:

Fūfūs, ūnūs ex meis intīmīs, *Fufius, one of my most intimate friends*.

h. The commencing point of time whence measurement proceeds, expressed by from, as:

Ex kalendis Januāriis ad hanc hōram, *from the first of January to the present hour*.

i. Immediate succession of time, after, as:

Ex consūlatu est prōfectūs in Galliam, *immediately after his consulship he set out for Gallia*.

Diem ex die expectābam, *I was waiting day after day*.

j. Source of information, with verbs of asking, hearing, &c.: as, Sēd aliquid ex Pompeiō sciam, *but I shall learn something from Pompey*.

k. Cause, as:

Claudicābat ex volnērē, *he was lame from a wound*.

l. That on which any thing depends, as:

Vīdētis pendēre ex arbōrē, *you see them hanging from a tree.*

m. The authority upon which a person acts, as :

Ex vestra auctoritātē fēci, *I have acted on your authority.*

o. In accordance with, as :

Stātūēs ūt ex fidē meā vidēbītūr, *you will decide as shall appear to be in accordance with my honour.*

Te ex sententiā nāvīgassē gaudeo, *I am delighted that your voyage has been satisfactory.*

p. In proportion, as :

Fāct haerēdem ex deuncē Caecinam, *he makes Cæcina heir to eleven-twelfths of his property.*

Magna ex partē tibi assentiōr, *I agree with you in a great measure.*

q. The quarter on or at which, as :

Una ex partē Rhēnō continentūr, *on one side they are shut in by the Rhine.*

[Ec] ē, ex in composition with verbs denotes—*a. out*, as : exīm-, 1332 *take out*; ēxi-, *go out*. *b. removal* by the act expressed in the verb, as : ēdormi-, *sleep off*. *c. escaping* by means of the act expressed in the simple verb, as : ēlucta- (r.), *get away by wrestling*. *d. obtaining an end* by the act of the simple verb, as : ēvestiga-, *trace out*; ēlābōra-, *work out*. *e. publicity*, as : ēdic-, *proclaim*. *f. ascent*, as : ēvēh-, *carry up*; exsist-, *stand up*. *g. completeness*, as : ēdisc-, *learn by heart*; exūr-, *burn up*. *h. change of character* with verbs formed from adjectives and nouns, as : expia-, *make clean, atone for*; ecfēra-, *make savage*. *i. removal* of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is formed, as : exossa-, *bone (of a fish)*; ēnōda-, *make smooth by the removal of knots*. *j. the reverse*, as : explica-, *unfold*. *k. distance*, as : exaudi-, *hear in the distance or on the outside*.

In adjectives formed from substantives this preposition denotes *absence*, as : ēnervi-, *without muscle*; exsomni-, *sleepless*.

In is used with the ablative and accusative; with the former 1336 when there is no motion,* with the accusative when there is motion.

In with the ablative denotes—*a. In*, in reference to place : as, In eō conclāvi cūbābat, *he slept in that chamber*.

* That is, no motion in relation to the noun; or rather, no motion from the interior of it to its exterior.

Attūlit in cāvēā pullōs, *he brought the chickens in a cage.*

b. *on or over, as :*

Nēmo eum unquam in ēquō sēdentem vidit, *no one ever saw him on horseback.*

Pons in Ibērō prōpe effectūs ērat, *the bridge over the Ebro was nearly finished.*

c. *Among, as :*

Caesārīs in barbārīs ērat obscūrius nōmēn, *Cæsar's name was not well known among the barbarians.*

Exercitum in Aulercīs collōcāvit, *he quartered the army in the country of the Aulerci.*

g. *In, before persons, signifying in the case of, in what concerns them, as :*

Idem in Nervīis fēcit, *he did the same in the case of the Nervii.*

k. The simple verbs of placing, such as pōn-, *put*, lōca-, *place*, stātu-, *set up* (even though motion be implied in them), take *in* with an ablative in the best writers, and that whether used in their simple sense or metaphorically : as,

Tābūlae testāmenti in aerāriō pōnuntūr, *the will is deposited in the treasury.*

Omnem cūram in sidērum cognitiōnē pōsuērunt, *they employed all their thoughts in the study of the stars.*

1337 *In* with an accusative denotes—*a. Into, as :*

Glādiū hosti in pectūs infixit, *he drove the sword into the enemy's breast.*

Paene in foveam dēcidī, *I all but fell into a ditch.*

b. *On to, as :*

Filiū in hūmērōs suōs extūlit, *he lifted his son on to his shoulders.*

f. *Direction on or to an object, as :*

In omnium fortunās ōcūlōs dēfigit, *he fixes his eye on the property of all.*

Viri in uxōrēs vitæ necisque hābent potestātem, *the husband has power of life and death over the wife.*

h. *Feeling towards, as :*

Ad impietātem in deōs, in hōmīnēs adjunxit injūriam, *to impiety towards the gods he added outrage to man.*

Si fērae partūs suōs diligunt, quā nōs in libērōs nostrōs indulgentiā essē dēbēmūs ? *If wild beasts love their offspring, what ought to be our kindness towards our children ?*

i. Purpose, for, to, as :

Nullā pēcūniā nīsi in rem militārem est dātā, *no money was given except for military purposes.*

j. Tendency, sense of words, &c., for, to, as, as :

In eam sententiam multā dixit, *he said much to this effect.*

l. In distributions the unit is expressed by *in* and an accusative plural with or without the adjective singulō-, while the English is expressed by *every, each, the, &c.*, as :

Iam ad dēnāriōs quinquāginta in singulōs mōdiōs pervēnerat annōnā, *the price of corn had now reached to fifty denaries the bushel.*

Vītium in diēs crescīt, *vice increases every day.*

m. The future in phrases of time expressed by *for, until, &c.*, as :

Ad coenam me in postērum diem invitāvit, *he asked me to dinner for the next day.*

In, when compounded with verbs, denotes—*a. into*, as : *īni*, 1338 *enter*. *b. upon*, as : *injung-*, *place (as a yoke) upon* ; *indu-*, *put on*. *c. against*, as : *infēr-*, *carry against* ; *illid-*, *dash against*. *d. at, over*, as : *ingēm-*, *groan at* ; *illācrūma-*, *weep over*. *e. privacy*, as : *īnaudi-*, *hear as a secret*.

Ob denotes—*a. towards*, with motion (but only in very old 1346 writers), as :

Ob Rōmam noctū lēgiōnēs dūcērē coepit, *he began to lead the legions by night towards Rome.*

b. Against, before, as :

Lānam ōb ōcūlum hābet, *he has a piece of wool over his eye.*

Mors ei ōb ōcūlōs saepē versāta est, *death often passed too and fro before his eyes.*

c. Against, for, in accounts, where money is set against the thing purchased, pledged, &c. ; or the thing purchased, &c., against the money, as :

'Ager obpositus pigneri Ob dēcem mnas, *my land has been put as a pledge against ten minae, i.e. has been mortgaged for that sum.*

Est flagitiōsum ōb rem iudicandam pēcūniam accipērē, *it is indeed a scandalous thing to take money for giving a verdict.*

d. A reason or purpose, for, on account of, as :

Ob eam rem tibi haec scripsi, *it is on this account I have said all this to you.*

1347 Ob in composition with verbs signifies—*a. to, towards*, as: *ŏbi-*, *go to*; *ostend-*, *hold out to*. *b. before*, as: *ŏbambŭla-*, *walk before*; *obversa-* (r.), *pass to and fro before*. *c. shutting, obstructing*, as: *ob-d-*, *put to*; *obstru-*, *build up*. *d. against* (physically), as: *oblucta-* (r.), *struggle against*. *e. against* (morally), as: *obnuntia-*, *bring an unfavourable report*. *f. upon*, as: *occulca-*, *tread upon*; *obtŕ-*, *trample upon*. *g. covering, affecting the surface*, as: *obdŭc-*, *draw over*; *occalle-*, *grow hard on the surface*.

1350 Pŕ denotes—*a. Through*, as:
Pŕ angustias cōpias transduxerat, he had led the forces through the defile.
Quod vidēbam quāsi per cāliginem, which I saw through a cloud as it were.
d. Of time, during, through, for, as:
Tēnuistī prōvinciam per dēcem annōs, you have clung to the province during ten years.
e. Through, by, by means of, as:
Quod per scēlūs ādeptūs est, per luxūriam ecfundīt, what he has obtained through impiety, he is squandering through luxury.
Per tē factum est quō mīnus pax fiēret, it was through you that peace was not made.
f. When the means employed are deceitful, pŕ may be translated by under; thus:
Aemŭlātiōnis suspectōs per nōmēn obsīdum āmōvēbat, those suspected of rivalry he was endeavouring to get rid of under the name of hostages.
h. With phrases denoting hindrance or non-hindrance, as:
Per dŭcēs stētērat, nōn per militēs, nē vincērent, it had been the fault of the generals, not the soldiers, that they had not conquered.
Diglādientŭr illi per mē licet, they may fight it out for me, i. e. as far as I am concerned.
Quum per vālētūdinem nāvīgārē pōtēris, ad nōs vēni, when your health permits you to sail, come to us.
j. By, in entreaties or oaths, as:
Pŕ ęgō tē deŏs ōro, I entreat you by the gods.
Jŭrārem per Jōvem, I would have sworn by Jupiter.

Për in composition with verbs denotes—*a. through, as : per-* 1351
düc-, lead through. b. completion, as : perfic- or perfici-, complete ;
permitt-, let go altogether, abandon (to others). c. destruction, as :
përi-, perish ; perd-, destroy.

Për in composition with adjectives denotes—*a. through, as : 1352*
pernoct-, lasting all night. b. very, as : perlëvi-, very light. c. de-
struction, as : perjüro-, violating an oath.

Prae denotes *before, as :*

1356

Stillantem prae sē pūgiōnem tūlit, he carried the dripping dag-
ger before him.

Cētēri tectiōrēs ; ēgō semper mē dīdīcissē prae mē tūlī, the
others are more reserved ; I ever avowed the fact that I once
studied the subject.

c. The cause (chiefly in negative sentences), for, as :

Nec lōquī prae maerōrē pōtuit, and he could not speak for grief.

d. In comparison with, by the side of, as :

Rōmam prae suā Căpuā inrīdēbunt, they will laugh at Rome
compared with their own Capua.

Prae in composition with verbs denotes—*a. before, as : prae-* 1357
mitt-, send in advance. b. before, in the sense of passing by, as :
praeflu-, flow by. c. at the head of, in command, as : praeēs-, be
in command ; praefic- or praefici-, place in command. d. at the ex-
trēmy, as : praerōd-, gnaw at the end. e. superiority, as : praesta-,
surpass. f. before, in time, as : praecerp-, gather too soon ; praedic-,
say beforehand. g. the doing a thing first for others to do after, as :
praei-rē verbā, to tell a person what he is to say.

Prae in the composition of adjectives denotes—*a. before, of*
place, as : praecip- or praecipit-, head-first. b. before, of time, as :
praescio-, knowing beforehand. c. at the extremity, as : praesto-,
burnt at the end. d. very, as : praecalto-, very deep ; praeclaro-,
most glorious.

Praetër denotes—*a. Passing by, as :*

1359

Praeter castrā Caesāris suās cōpiās transduxit, he led his own
troops past Cæsar's camp.

b. Beyond, in amount or degree, as :

Lăcus praeter mōdum crēvērat, the lake had risen above its usual
level.

c. Besides, i. e. in addition to, as :

Praeter sē dēnōs ad conlōquium addūcunt, *they bring to the conference ten men each besides themselves.*

d. *Except, excluding, as :*

Omnibus sententiis praeter ūnam condemnātus est, *he was found guilty by all the votes except one.*

e. *Contrary to, as :*

Nihil ei praeter ipsius vōluntātem accidit, *nothing happened to him contrary to his own wish.*

1360 Praeter in composition with verbs signifies *passing by, as :*
praeteri-, *go by; praetermitt-, let go by.*

1361 Prō denotes—*a. Before, of place, as :*

Praesidiā prō templis omnibus cernītis, *you see troops before all the temples.*

b. *Before, with the notion of defending, in defence of, for, as :*

Prō nūdātā moenibus patriā corpōra oppōnunt, *in defence of their native city, now stripped of its walls, they present their bodies to the enemy.*

Haec contrā lēgem prōquē lēgē dictā sunt, *such were the arguments urged against and in favour of the law.*

c. *In place of, as :*

Lūbenter verbā jungēbant, ut sis prō si vis, *they were fond of joining words, as sis for si vis, 'if you please.'*

Cui lēgātus et prō praetōrē fuit, *under whom he was lieutenant and proprætor, i.e. deputy-prætor.*

d. *Equivalent to, as good as, as, for, in return for, as :*

Pro occisō rēlictus est, *he was left for dead.*

Misimus qui prō vectūrā solvaret, *we have sent a person to pay for the freight.*

Hunc amārē pro ejus suāvitātē dēbēmus, *this man we ought to love for his own sweetness of character.*

1362 Prō in composition with verbs signifies—*a. forward, as : porrīg-, stretch out. b. out, as : prōsili-, leap out. c. to a distance, as : prōterre-, frighten off. d. downwards, as : prōtēr-, trample down. e. extension, as : prōmitt-, allow to grow long. f. publicity, as : prōfite- (r.), declare publicly. g. progress, as : prōfic- or prōfici-, make progress, advance; prōdēs-, be of service. h. in place of, as : prōcūra-, take care of in place of another. i. before, in time, as : prōlūd-, rehearse beforehand. j. postponement or continuation, as :*

prōdic-, name a future day; *prōrōga-*, continue for a longer period (by enactment).

Prō in the composition of adjectives denotes downward, as : 1363
prōclivi-, downhill.

Prō in composition with nouns of relationship denotes greater 1364
distance, expressed in English by *great*, as : *prōnēpōt-*, great-grandson.

Proptēr (from *prōpē*) denotes near, as : 1366

Propter Plātōnis stātūam consēdimūs, we took our seats near a statue of Plato.

b. On account of, for, through, as :

Tirōnem proptēr hūmānītātem mālo salvom, quam proptēr ūsum meum, I wish Tiro to recover more on account of his excellent heart than for any benefit to myself.

Nam nōn est aequom mē proptēr vos dēcipi, for it is not reasonable that I should be a loser through you.

Re (or *rēd*) in composition with verbs signifies—*a. backward*, 1367
as *rētrāh-*, drag back; *rēnuntia-*, carry word back. *b. hence reflection of light or sound*, as : *rēsōna-*, re-echo; *rēfulge-*, shine brilliantly. *c. in return*, as : *rēpend-*, repay; *rēfēri-*, strike in return. *d. opposing an effort in the other direction*, as : *rētīne-*, hold back; *rētīce-*, keep back (a secret). *e. refusal*, as : *rēnu-*, refuse by a shake of the head. *f. reversing some former act*, as : *rescind-*, cut down again (that which has been erected); *rēmītt-*, let go again (that which has been stretched). *g. reversing the act expressed in the simple verb*, as : *rēfig-*, unfix; *rēsīgna-*, unseal. *h. putting away from sight, concealing, sheltering*, as : *rēcōnd-*, put away into some secret place; *rēcīp-* or *rēcīpi-*, receive and shelter. *i. remaining behind when the greater part is gone*, as : *rēmāne-*, remain behind. *j. change of state*, as : *redd-*, render, make; *rēdīg-*, reduce to some state. *k. repetition*, as : *rēflōresc-*, blossom a second time.

Sē in the old writers is used as a preposition with the ablative, 1369
and signifies separation or without, as :

Si plūs mīnus sēcūerunt, sē fraude estō, if they cut more or less, it shall be without detriment to them.

Sē (or *sēd*) in composition signifies—*a. with verbs, separation*, 1370
as : *sēcēd-*, withdraw; *sēpōn-*, put aside. *b. in adjectives, absence*,
as : *sēcūro-*, free from care.

- 1371 *Sĕcundum* (i.e. *sĕquendum*, from *sĕqu-* (r.), *follow*) denotes—
a. Following, as :
 I tū *sĕcundum*, *do you come after me.*
b. Along, as :
 Lĕgiōnēs iter *sĕcundum* mārē sūpĕrum faciunt, *the legions are marching along the upper sea.*
b. Behind, without motion, as :
 Vulnūs accēpit *sĕcundum* aurem, *he received a wound behind the ear.*
d. After, of time, as :
 Spem ostendis *sĕcundum* cōmītiā, *you hold out a hope of improvement after the elections.*
e. Second in order, *next to*, as :
Sĕcundum tē nihīl est mihi āmīcius sōlītūdīnē, *next to you, I have no better friend than solitude.*
f. In accordance with, as :
 Omniā quae *sĕcundum* nātūrā fiunt sunt hābenda in bōnīs, *every thing that happens in accordance with nature is to be reckoned among blessings.*
g. In favour of, as :
 Pontificēs *sĕcundum* eum dēcrēvērunt, *the pontifical college decreed in his favour.*
- 1373 *Sūb* has for its original meaning *up*, as is seen in its derivatives the adjectives *sūpĕro-*, *above*; *summo-*, *highest*. It is found with both accusative and ablative.
- 1374 *Sūb* with the accusative denotes—*a. Up to*, as :
 Sub primam nostram āciem successērunt, *they came up to our first line.*
b. Under, with motion, as :
 Exercītus sub jūgum missūs est, *the army was sent under the yoke.*
c. Within reach of things from above (with motion), as :
 Sūb ictum vēnērunt, *they came within throw.*
e. In phrases of time, *immediately*, *after*, as :
 Sūb eās littĕrās stātīm rēcītātae sunt tuae, *immediately after these dispatches, yours were read out.*
- 1375 *Sūb* with the ablative signifies—*a. Under* (without motion), as :
 Sub terrā sempĕr hābitāvĕrant, *they had always lived underground.*

b. *Within reach of things above (without motion), as :*

Sūb ictū erant, *they were within shot.*

e. *In phrases of time—during, in, just, at, as :*

Nē sūb ipsā prōfectionē militēs oppidum irrumpērent, portās obstruūt, *that the soldiers might not burst into the town during the very embarkation, he builds up the gates.*

Sūb in composition with verbs denotes—*a. up, as : subduc-, 1376 draw up; sustine-, hold up. b. under, as : subēs-, be under; subjace-, lie under. c. assistance, as : subvēni-, come to assist. d. succession, as : succīn-, sing after. e. in place of, as : suffic- or suffici-, appoint in place of. f. near, as : sūbēs-, be at hand. g. underhand, secretly, as : surrip- or surripī-, snatch away secretly; subduc-, withdraw quietly. h. in a slight degree, as : subride-, smile; subaccūsa-, accuse in a manner. i. abundance, as : suppēt-, be abundant.*

Sūb in the composition of adjectives denotes—in a slight degree, 1377 as : sūbobscurō-, *rather dark.*

Sūpēr is followed both by an ablative and an accusative. With 1380 an ablative it signifies—*a. Over (without motion), as :*

Ensis ei sūpēr cervicē pendet, *a sword hangs over his neck.*

b. *Upon (without motion), as :*

Pōtērās rēquiescērē frondē sūpēr vīridi, *thou mightest have reposed upon green leaves.*

c. *Concerning, as :*

Quid āgendum est sūpēr lēgatiōnē, *what is to be done about the embassy?*

Sūpēr with an accusative denotes—*a. Upon (with motion), 1381 as :*

Sūpēr aspidem assidit, *he sits down upon an asp.*

Sūpēr vallum praecipitantūr, *they are thrown headforemost upon the stakes.*

b. *Above in order, as :*

Nōmentānūs erat sūpēr ipsum, *Nomentanus occupied the seat above the great man himself.*

c. *Besides, as :*

Pūnicum exercitum sūpēr morbum etiam fāmēs affecit, *the Punic army, besides sickness, suffered severely also from famine.*

- 1382 *Sūpēr* in composition with verbs signifies—*a. over*, as: *sūpēr-ēmīne-*, *project above*; *sūperfund-*, *pour over*. *b. abundance*, as: *supērēs-*, *abound*. *c. remaining over, survival*, as: *sūpērēs-*, *remain over, survive*. *d. in addition*, as: *sūperaddūc-*, *bring in addition*.
- 1383 *Sūprā* denotes—*a. Upon*, with motion, as :
Nēque exiērant unquam sūprā terram, nor had they ever come out above the ground.
Et saltū sūprā vēnābūlā fertūr, and with a bound he flies upon the spears.
b. Upon, in contact with, as :
Sūprā delphīnōs sēdentēs, seated upon dolphins.
d. Above, in order, thus :
Accūbuēram āpud eum et quīdem sūprā me Attīcūs, I had just sat down to dinner at his house, and by the way Atticus sat next above me.
e. Above, in amount, as :
Sūprā mīliā vīgintī, above twenty thousand.
f. Over and above, as :
Sūprā bellī Sābīnī mētum id quōque accesserat, besides the fear of a Sabine war, there was this further trouble.
g. Of time before, as :
Paulō sūpra hanc mēmōriam, a little before the times which those now living can recollect.
- 1384 *Tēnūs*, which always follows the noun, signifies *reaching to*—
a. With an accusative (very rarely), as :
Rēgiō quae virgīnīs aequōr ād Hellēs
Et Tānaīn tēnūs immensō descendīt āb Eurō,
The region which to the maiden Helle's sea
And far as the Don from the vast East descends.
b. With an ablative of the singular, as :
Antiōchus Taurō tēnus regnārē jussūs est, it was ordained that Antiochus should rule only as far as the Taurus.
c. With an ablative of the plural (very rarely), as :
Pectōribusquē tēnus mollēs ērectūs īn aurās
Nārībūs et pātūlō partēm mārīs ēvōmīt ōre,
Chest-high upraised into the moving air
From wide-spread mouth and nostrils vomits out
One half the sea.

d. With a genitive of the plural, as :

Et crūrū tēnūs ā mentō pālčāriā pendent,
And leg-deep from the chin the dewlap hangs.

Ultrā denotes—*Beyond*, as :

1390

Sunt certī dēnīquē finēs
 Quōs ultrā citrāquē nēquit consistērē rectum,
There are in fine fixed limits
Beyond or short of which truth cannot halt.

In the examples already given, it has been seen that preposi- 1391
 tions are at times placed after their nouns, although their name
 implies the contrary. The preposition *cum* is always placed after
 the ablatives of the personal pronouns, as : *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum,*
nōbiscum, vōbiscum, and for the most part after the ablatives of the
 simple relative, as : *quōcum, quācum, quīcum, quībuscum.*

ORDER OF WORDS.

In the simplest form of sentence, viz. one which denotes an 1458
 action, the common order is the nominative, the accusative, the
 verb ; i.e. first the quarter whence the action proceeds, then the
 direction of that action, lastly the action itself. Any words be-
 longing to the nominative and accusative commonly follow them,
 while those belonging to the verb commonly precede it. The latter
 consist of adverbs or adverbial phrases which express the time,
 manner, means, and generally the attending circumstances.

But often the words of a Latin sentence are placed with a view 1459
 to marking their relative importance.

The most conspicuous place in a sentence or clause of a sen- 1460
 tence is the first, and here emphatic words are placed.

The last place too in a sentence is often an emphatic one, ex- 1466
 cept for the verb.

The verb is commonly placed last in a sentence. When placed 1467
 first, it is emphatic. When neither first nor last, the word before
 it is emphatic.

An adjective, if emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive ; 1469
 when not emphatic, it commonly follows. But with the demon-
 strative pronouns the rule is reversed.

- 1472 Nouns in apposition and the genitive commonly follow the substantive to which they belong, and therefore have an emphasis when they precede.
- 1473 The second place in a sentence is adapted to unimportant words, which are inserted here although unconnected with the adjoining words.
- 1474 It is because of their unimportant character that *autem*, *quidem*, *quodquæ*, &c. never occupy the first place in a clause or sentence. *Igitur*, *enim*, *verò*, are occasionally found at the beginning, and then have more importance than when they occupy their more ordinary place after the first word.

THE END.